BASIC COURSE
Volume 1

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and SOUKSOMBOUN SAYASITHSENA
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
WASHINGTON, D.C.
1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE
PREFACE

FSI Lao Basic Course, Volume I, provides introductory material in modern spoken Lao for the student who wishes to achieve proficiency in the language spoken by about three million persons in Laos and an additional ten million persons in Thailand. The Vientiane dialect, used in official government communications and generally the most useful for American students, is the dialect represented here.

The initial volume of this course is the product of collaboration between Warren G. Yates, chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages and Souksomboun Sayasithsena, Lao language instructor. Dr. Yates has provided the general plan for the work and the English language content. Mr. Sayasithsena has been responsible for the authenticity of the Lao language material. Assisting in the classroom trial of most of the material in this volume were Malichanh Svengsouk, Kongkam Thanasack, Doungkeo Sayasithsena, and Somsangouane Thanasack. Mrs. Svengsouk also provided assistance in proof reading. Irma C. Ponce did the final typing.

Unlike most FSI language textbooks, this volume is not accompanied by tape recordings. Lao Basic Course, Volume I, follows the “microwave” format and is not so much a set of materials to be mastered as a set of guidelines for conversational interplay between students and their native-speaking Lao instructor. The format, which owes much to the work of another FSI linguist, Dr. Earl W. Stevick, does not lend itself readily to presentation on magnetic tapes.

FSI is indebted to Warren Ziegler and Marcelle Carlier of the Agency for International Development for early encouragement and financial support for the development of Lao teaching material. FSI also gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education in the development and publication of this volume.

James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PREFACE</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREETING CYCLE:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'How are you? I'm fine.'</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>บ้อ as question word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE 1:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'What's this? It's a book.'</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>缯 as a copula verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE 2:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Whose pen is this? This is your pen.'</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Pronouns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE 3:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Is this a book? Yes, it is.'</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>缯 ircuit as a confirmatory response</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE 4:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Where are you going? I'm going to the market.'</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>คำตอบ as a locative question word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE 5:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'He's going to school, isn't he? No, he isn't. He's going to the bank.'</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative responses to缯 ircuit questions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYCLE 6:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'What's your name? My name's...'</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position of นี่ 'what?' in the sentence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CYCLE 7:
'Is she pretty?
Yes, she is.' ............................... 27

Stative verbs in questions and responses

CYCLE 8:
'Is he a polite person?
Yes, he is.' ............................... 29

Stative verbs as noun modifiers

CYCLE 9:
'Are you an American?
Yes, I am.' ............................... 34

pen as a special copula verb

CYCLE 10:
'What country do you come from?
I come from Laos.' .......................... 37

daj as a question word

CYCLE 11:
'Where is Sedone province?
It's in Laos.' ............................. 41

juu as a verb of location

CYCLE 12:
'What are you doing?
I'm writing a letter.' ....................... 46

Transitive verbs

CYCLE 13:
'Where are we going to eat? Here?
No, let's go eat there.' ..................... 49

th5° as a hortatory particle

CYCLE 14:
'Where did he have his hair cut?
At the barbershop.' ........................ 52

Locatives with verbs of activity
CYCLE 15:
'Where is he going to send the cable?
At the Post Office.' ......................... 56
si as future time particle

CYCLE 16:
'Is he coming here?
No. He's going over there.' ............... 60
nǐ, hâ, phí, phùn as Adverbs of Place

CYCLE 17:
'Do you know the way to...?
Yes. Go straight ahead, then...' ............. 62
tháaň in directions; hùu 'to know a fact'

CYCLE 18:
'Do you know (my younger sister)?
Yes, I met (her) at...!' ....................... 66
hùucák 'to know a person'
Terms for siblings

CYCLE 19:
'What part of Laos do you come from?
I come from the (central) part.' ............... 72
Compass directions

CYCLE 20:
'Where are you going to put it? Over there?
Yes, I'm going to put it over there.' ............ 77
paj and máa as verbs of direction of motion

CYCLE 21:
'Where? In this box here?
(No) In that bag there.' ...................... 81
Determiners versus Adverbs of Place

CYCLE 22:
'Are you going to change the tire (that is) over here?
(No) I'm going to change the tire (that is) over there.' ......................... 85
CYCLE 23:

'Is he going to read this book over there? No, he's going to read it over there.' .......... 90

Non-optional jū in Locative

CYCLE 24:

'How much is one and one? One and one is two.' ................. 98

Cardinal numbers and thāw daj 'how much, many?'

CYCLE 25:

'What day (of the week) is today? Today is (Sunday).' ......................... 104

Names of the days of the week.

CYCLE 26:

'What month is it? It's (January).' .......................... 108

Names of the months.

CYCLE 27:

'What's the date today? It's (March 23rd, 1970).' ....................... 114

Complete dates (day, month, year)

CYCLE 28:

'What are you going to do (today)? (Today) I'm going sightseeing.' .............. 118

Certain Time Expressions

CYCLE 29:

'What time is it? It's (eleven thirty).' ..................... 126

móon as 'o'clock, hour'

CYCLE 30:

'What time do you (go to school)? At 9:00 a.m.' ....................... 129

sàw, bāaj, lēsn, kaan khýyn as divisions of the day
CYCLE 31:
'How long will you (practice)?
One hour.' ........................................ 135
No. + (sǔamóon, náathíi, piì) as responses to cák +
(sǔamóon, etc.) and don paandaŋ 'how long?'

CYCLE 32:
'Do you have enough time to...?
No, I don't. Yes, I do.' ......................... 140
wéeláa as time for doing something

CYCLE 33:
'How will you go?
By bus.' ............................................ 146
nǎm used with types of conveyances

CYCLE 34:
'Who will come with you?
My friend.' ........................................ 149
nǎm used for accompaniment and other uses

CYCLE 35:
'How will you go?
I will walk.' ...................................... 153
pàj / mǎj with verbs of locomotion

CYCLE 36:
'Will you be able to work?
Yes.' .............................................. 159
dàj to indicate possibility or ability

CYCLE 37:
'Do you know how to drive?
No, I don't.' .................................. 163
pen to indicate acquired ability
CYCLE 38:
'Can she type?
No, because she doesn't know how.' .......... 167
pen contrasted with ðàj in usage

CYCLE 39:
'How many books do you see?
Two.' ---------------------------------------- 171
Numbers with unit classifiers.

CYCLE 40:
'How much did this briefcase cost?
500 kips.' ------------------------------------ 174
láakháà (price) and cák kîp (How many kips?)

CYCLE 41:
'Did you go anywhere?
No, I didn't go anywhere.' ...................... 182
njáñ, sáj, and pháj as indefinite nouns in negative sentences and in questions

CYCLE 42:
'Why does everybody want to meet her?
Because she's pretty.' ------------------------- 188
pháj pháj as inclusive indefinite noun

CYCLE 43:
'He's impolite isn't he?
Yes, he is. Nobody wants to see his face.' .... 193
pháj pháj kào bôô... as negative inclusive indefinite nouns

CYCLE 44:
'This house is bigger than that one, isn't it?
No, it isn't. It's smaller.' ...................... 196
Comparative of stative verbs
CYCLE 45:
'Which of these three women is the prettiest?
They are equally pretty.' .......................... 201

Stative verb with kwāa muū as superlative degree
(of limited number)

CYCLE 46:
'How many dollars do you have left?
(I have) two dollars left.' .......................... 206

līa as a verb indicating a remainder of something

CYCLE 47:
'Are we out of coffee?
No, we still have some.' ............................ 210

mót contrasted with līa

CYCLE 48:
'Do you still have questions?
Yes, I (still) do.' ................................. 217

njān ... jūu for continuing situations

CYCLE 49:
'Are you still out of work?
No, I got a job a long time ago.' ........................ 220

tās don lēsw used to indicate a situation that
began in the past and continues into the present

CYCLE 50:
'Your book has already been stolen, isn't that right?
That's right, it has (already been stolen).' ... 223

thīyk in passive constructions with certain verbs

CYCLE 51:
'What color are his shoes?
They're black.' ................................. 230

Names of colors

x
CYCLE 52:
'How well do you sing?
Not very well.' .......................... 234
phòot 'too...' b55... paandaaj 'not very...',
... paandaaj? 'How...?'

CYCLE 53:
'Does he read fast?
Pretty fast.' .............................. 240
...sômkhúan 'pretty...' as a modifier

CYCLE 54:
'Don't eat too much.' .......................... 244
jææ in negative request forms

CYCLE 55:
'Where have you been (to)?
I've been to the doctor's.' .......................... 249
paaj... máa used to indicate recent completion of
some activity

CYCLE 56:
'Where did this plane come from?
It came from Bangkok.' .......................... 252
máa t çe used to show point of origin

CYCLE 57:
'Why are you washing your hands?
I'm washing my hands to eat.' .......................... 256
Word order of verb phrases of purpose

CYCLE 58:
'From where to where?
From when to when?' .......................... 261
t çe... hàa and câäk / t çe... thän / hàa / hòot in
extent of space or period of time constructions ....
CYCLE 59:
What's the matter with you?
I have (a headache)." ........................................ 269
...pen njān 'what's the matter with...!' and words referring to illness.

CYCLE 60:
'Why didn't you come to school?
Because I was sick.' ........................................ 274
pen njān... cyn and phā wāa in asking and giving reasons for some activity

CYCLE 61:
'How do you feel about him?
I pity him.' ........................................ 279
Verbs of emotion

CYCLE 62:
'Do you think he will come?
Yes, I think he'll come.' ........................................ 284
Verbs of thinking and saying with wāa

CYCLE 63:
'Is it dangerous?
Yes, it's very dangerous.' ........................................ 289
Stative verbs with lāaj

CYCLE 64:
'Do you believe he'll pass the exam?
Yes, I do.' ........................................ 296
sàn boo? in questions

CYCLE 65:
'You will read, and then what will you do?
I'll read, then I'll go eat.' ....................... 303
lèww as a sentence connective
CYCLE 66:
'Did you write the letter yet?
'Yes, not yet. (or) No, not yet.' .................... 307
lèèw and njàñ as aspect particles

CYCLE 67:
'Have you finished recording?
Yes, I have. (or) No, not yet.' .................... 314
Verb Phrase with lèèw lè(èw)

CYCLE 68:
'Who are you going to fix the car for?
I'll fix it for him.' .................... 321
hâj as a benefactive verb

CYCLE 69:
'What do you want me to do?
I want you to stay with him.' .................... 327
jâak and jâak hâj

CYCLE 70:
'What were you going to have him do for you?
I was going to have him type letters for me.' .. 333
hâj as benefactive and causative verb

CYCLE 71:
'What's the table made of?
Wood.' ................................. 338
hèt dùaj with materials

CYCLE 72:
'What did he write with?
With a pen.' ................................. 345
dùaj with Instrumental
CYCLE 73:
'What will you use for making a fire?
Charcoal.' .............................................. 351

Instrumental use of sàj

CYCLE 74:
'What's a clock for?
To tell time.' ........................................... 357

mìi wàj sàmlāp to indicate use or purpose of something

CYCLE 75:
'Where's he stationed now?
Right now he's in Pakse.' ......................... 362

Time expressions

CYCLE 76:
'He will be transferred very soon, is that true?
That's right.' ........................................... 369

Time expressions with direct reference to present time.

CYCLE 77:
How much longer will you be here?
'Two more weeks.' ...................................... 373

†ik and njān †ik with Time Expressions

CYCLE 78:
'What kind of food do you normally like to eat?
Spicy food.' ............................................. 383

Adverbs of frequency

CYCLE 79:
'Must he choose a guide?
Yes, he must.' ......................................... 387

Modals: tôø, khúan, âat, khýy, khôn

xiv
CYCLE 80:
'Have you ever been to Laos?'
Yes, I have. (or) No, I never have been.' .... 394
kháej to indicate having experienced something

CYCLE 81:
'Is there anybody that is going to help him?'
Yes, I am.' ........................................... 400
Indefinite pronoun phảj after míi

CYCLE 82:
'What do we call liquid that we get from an orange?'
Orange juice.' ....................................... 406

CYCLE 83:
'What do we call a person who is always drunk?'
A drunkard.' ........................................ 409

CYCLE 84:
'What do we call a person who fixes cars?'
An auto mechanic.' ................................. 415

CYCLE 85:
'What do we call a person who pilots a plane?'
A pilot.' ............................................. 419
INTRODUCTION

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Lao to English speakers. Some dialect of Lao is spoken and understood by approximately three million persons in Laos and about ten million in Thailand. The Lao presented in this book is the Vientiane dialect, which is used in all governmental communications. It is spoken in the central part of Laos by approximately 2,000,000 persons and is understood throughout the Kingdom of Laos and in Northeast Thailand.

The material in this text is in the form of a series of 85 'cycles' in the 'microwave' format originated by Dr. Earl W. Stevick of the FSI, and first used in two 'modules' of a course in Swahili. The description of the microwave format that follows is based on these two texts. Each 'unit' of a microwave course is called a cycle and consists of two 'phases'. In the first phase (M-phase) the student learns a small amount of the language and in the second phase (C-phase) he puts it to use. The diagram below illustrates this:

![Diagram showing the phases of a microwave course]

ONE CYCLE

(Footnote on next page)
The term 'microwave' (a very short wave) emphasizes the short span of time between the presentation of new material and its actual use in real communication.

The teaching methods\textsuperscript{2} used with the M-phase and C-phase may vary a great deal and the teacher should feel free to use the one that seems most effective to him. The sentences in the M-phase are provided with cue words and they may be done like substitution drills, but other types of drill such as mimicry drills, transformation drills, translation drills, etc., should also be used whenever they seem appropriate.

In the C-phase the instructor should exert himself to the fullest extent possible to make everything that is said in class be 'real communication'. Communication can occur only if this condition is met: One person is giving information that another person doesn't have but is interested in having. The C-phase will normally consist of questions and answers, which may be joined together to form short conversational exchanges. In the beginning this will be the limit of the student's capacity. Later on short narrations will be possible and normal. If the students are going to be interested in what is being said it follows that they may wish to have some control over what is being talked about. The instructor should encourage this. This may mean any of several things, depending on the nature of the class and their spirit of independence, etc. It may mean only that the instructor supplies new vocabulary items

\textsuperscript{1} Swahili: An Active Introduction, General Conversation and Swahili: An Active Introduction, Geography ed. by Earl W. Stevick, Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, Washington, D.C., 1966

\textsuperscript{2} More explicit and detailed suggestions for teaching microwaves are included in Notes to Teachers at the end of the Introduction. Specific advice for full exploitation of the material in each cycle is given in each cycle. All of these suggestions are given in the Lao language for the benefit of Lao teachers who may not understand English very well.
to be used in patterns already learned or it may mean that
additional grammatical patterns and vocabulary items may have
to be taught. In either case the instructor should allow the
student to have a major voice in what is taught. The instructor
should be thoroughly familiar with the materials contained in
this text so that he may readily skip about when the student's
interest leads him to do so. Each cycle forms an independent
unit so that taking the cycles out of sequence will not cause
any problems that can not be easily dealt with. This text
should be looked upon as an aid to teaching and not as a
complete course of instruction.

It will normally require from 250 to 300 hours in class
to complete this text. A student who has done well in this
part of the course should be able to perform all of the following
things: order a simple meal, ask for a room in a hotel, ask and
give street directions, tell time, handle travel requirements and
expressions of politeness plus some of the following: introduce
people to each other, discuss his work, give autobiographical
information, and discuss current events.

Notes To Students

1) Listen carefully and imitate as closely as you can
what the instructor says. Be prepared to try to
improve what you say if the instructor doesn't
approve of it. Keep in mind that in the beginning
of language study you will probably have rather
poor ability to monitor your own efforts. The
closer your sounds resemble English the farther
they will be from Lao.

2) You should always know the meaning of anything you
say without trying to put a literal word-for-word
English translation on it. For example, sêa khôj
sii fàa means 'My shirt is blue' but a word-by-word
translation of this would be 'shirt I color sky.'
All you need to know is what a Lao would say if he
wanted to tell you that his shirt was blue.

3) The material presented to you in each cycle is very
limited both in content and grammatical form. You
will not find it difficult to learn the meanings,
to pronounce the sentences, or to understand the
grammatical structure presented, but you should keep in mind that you will not only be expected to do the things referred to above, but you will be expected to know how to use these sentences in 'communicative' situations, i.e. situations in which you are telling someone else something he doesn't know, but needs or wants to know.

4) The 'Notes' that accompany each cycle contain information of several different kinds: (a) description of the grammatical structure in the cycle, (b) information about the meanings and uses of words, and (c) descriptions of situations in which words are used. This information should help you understand better what is being taught in the cycle. You should study it outside of class after you have learned to use the material in the cycle.

5) The 'Application' should be done after completion of all other parts of the cycle. It provides an opportunity for you to test your knowledge of different aspects of the cycle such as grammatical structure, vocabulary, etc.

6) The Lao use a writing system which is historically related to that used for Sanskrit. At a later stage in the course you will be asked to learn to read it, but it would impose an undue hardship on you in the beginning to have to learn it, so a special transcription has been devised. It is, however, provided only as an aid to memory. You will learn correct pronunciation by imitating your teacher, being corrected, and trying again, but not by reading. Although all the symbols used in the special transcription are explained in the chart that follows, it will be helpful to keep the following conventions in mind: (a) Vowel length is indicated by doubling the vowel symbol, and (b) The pitch contour on a syllable is indicated by a symbol above the vowel.
EXPLANATION OF THE SPECIAL TRANSCRIPTION
USED IN THIS TEXT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Usual English Letter</th>
<th>Approximate Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>similar to English b in buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>p (after s)</td>
<td>like the p in spy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(no puff of air after it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ph</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>like p in pie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>similar to English d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t (after s)</td>
<td>like the t in sty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(no puff of air after it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t as in tie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>k (after s)</td>
<td>like the k in ski</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(no puff of air after it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k as in kite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>somewhat like j in jet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l as in long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m as in me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>h as in hen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>f as in fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s as in see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n as in need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nj</td>
<td>-ny</td>
<td>as in canyon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>as in vet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>as in yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i as in sip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>ee as in see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech sound</td>
<td>Transcription</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e as in pet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>ay</td>
<td>a as in date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a as in cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a as in fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>somewhat like u in sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yy</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>nothing like it in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>uh</td>
<td>like a in Cuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>similar to British pronunciation of sir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>somewhat like u in fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aa</td>
<td>ah</td>
<td>a as in father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>oo</td>
<td>oo as in look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uu</td>
<td>ou</td>
<td>like oo in boot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o as in cone but shorter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o as in so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oo</td>
<td>aw</td>
<td>aw as in law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la, ua, iw, ew, eew, ew, uj, ooj, ya, yaj, and uaj</td>
<td></td>
<td>have no counterparts in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aw</td>
<td>ow</td>
<td>ow as in cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaw</td>
<td>ow</td>
<td>like ow above but longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aj</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>y as in my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaj</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>like y in my but longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oj</td>
<td>oy</td>
<td>oy as in boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ooj</td>
<td>oy</td>
<td>like oy as in boy but longer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*xxi*
TONES IN LAO

There are six tones in Lao. The pitch contours, names, and symbols for them are illustrated below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>khaa</th>
<th>khaa</th>
<th>khàa</th>
<th>khãa</th>
<th>kháaw</th>
<th>khâw</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pitch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contour</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Names</strong></td>
<td>LOW</td>
<td>MID</td>
<td>HIGH FALLING</td>
<td>LOW RISING</td>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td>LOW FALLING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Symbol</strong></td>
<td>NO MARK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ยิ่งชมรมกิจข้าราชการ (Notes to the Teacher)

ยิ่งชมรมกิจข้าราชการและยิ่งชมรมประยุกต์ด้วยสมุทรจากจอมพล ปรากฏ M และสมุทร C
จึงเห็นและทราบจะประยุกต์ด้วยสมุทรจากจอมพล ปรากฏ M ตามที่มีการอนุมัติจะสอบท่านตาม
และก่อนถึงจะสอบท่านจึงมีจุบบว่าจากสมุทรจากจอมพล C ซึ่งใบในที่มีรู้จักจอมพล C ที่มี
สมุทรจากจอมพล C ปรากฏ M ได้โดยไม่กำหนดวัน สมุทรจากจอมพล C จะเข้าไปยิ่งชมรมกิจข้าราชการด้วย

ยิ่งชมรมกิจข้าราชการ M และยิ่งชมรมประยุกต์จึงมีใบคำให้คำปรึกษาตามขอของ

ข้อบังคับวันที่ (1) จึงเห็นและยินยอมให้ยิ่งชมรมประยุกต์ออกใบคำปรึกษา (2) ได้กำหนด
วันถึงสามารถอนุมัติจะสอบท่านตามสมุทรจากจอมพล C และสมุทรจากจอมพล C ข้อบังคับว่าจะจัดรู้จักตาม

(3) ได้กำหนดระยะเวลาตามที่สถานจินตก และจุบบว่า สมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่าจะจัดรู้จักข้าราชการด้วย
ข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C ที่จุบบว่าจะจัดรู้จักข้าราชการด้วย

ตามจุบบว่าคัดลอกที่สถานสอนอาจารย์งานได้แก่อาจารย์จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่าที่สถานสอนอาจารย์งาน

จุบบว่าอาจารย์จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจอมพล C จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า จุบบว่า

อาจารย์จุบบว่าข้าราชการและสมุทรจากจgom
LAO BASIC COURSE
GREETING CYCLE

A. Repeat each utterance after the instructor.

B. Give a complete sentence that includes the cue word that the instructor will give you.

C. Be sure you understand the meaning of each sentence.

M-1

sábaaj  sábaaj  to be well, comfortable

dii  sábaajdii  good, well  Hello!  Hi!

M-2

boo  sábaajdii boo?  (question word)  How are you?  [Good morning, good afternoon, good evening, etc.]

càw  càw sábaajdii boo?  you  How are you?

M-3

khɔopcaj  sábaajdii khɔopcaj  thank you  Fine, thank you.

khaj  khaj sábaajdii  I, me  I'm fine, thank you.

...dee?  càw dee?  and {what, how, about...? And you?

C-1

A. sábaajdii  A. Hello.  [Hi, good morning, etc.]

B. sábaajdii  B. Hello.  [Hi, good morning, etc.]
C-2
A. săbaajdii bôo? A. How are you?
B. săbaajdii khâompcaj, càw dee? B. Fine, thank you, and you?
A. khôj săbaajdii khâompcaj A. I'm fine, thank you.

C-3
A. càw săbaajdii bôo? A. How are you?
B. khôj săbaajdii khâompcaj, càw dee? B. I'm fine, thank you, and you?
A. khôj săbaajdii khâompcaj A. I'm fine, thank you.

NOTES

1) A Lao sentence has two parts: a Subject and a Predicate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>càw</td>
<td>săbaajdii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'You'</td>
<td>are well, fine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) The Subject is a Noun Phrase. A Noun Phrase is a (1) Noun plus modifiers, determiners, etc. or (2) a Noun Substitute (pronoun, etc.).

   Noun Phrase
   
   | càw      | 'you' |
   |

3) The Predicate is a Verb Phrase. A Verb Phrase is a Verb (or Verbs) with optional preverbal elements and postverbal complements.

   Verb Phrase
   
   | săbaajdii | '(is/are) well, fine' |

2
4) The Subject (NP) precedes the Predicate (VP), thus a Sentence (S) can be written in this way:

\[ S \rightarrow \text{NP} + \text{VP} \]

which means 'A sentence consists of a Noun Phrase preceding a Verb Phrase'.

5) A Sentence can be changed into a question by the addition of a question word (Q), thus \( S + Q \).

\[ \text{NP} + \text{VP} + \text{Q} \]

\[ \text{càw sábaajdíi böö} \]
(you [are] well Question)

'Are you well?'

APPLICATION

1. \( \text{khôj} \) is probably the ______ of the sentence \( \text{khôj sábaajdíi} \)
   (a) predicate  (b) subject  (c) question word  (d) none of these.

   (All answers are at the bottom of the page.)

2. In the sentence \( \text{sábaajdíi böö, sábaajdíi} \) is (a) subject
   (b) question word  (c) predicate  (d) none of these.

3. In the sentence \( \text{càw sábaajdíi böö, böö} \) is (a) the question word
   (b) predicate  (c) subject  (d) none of these.

4. \( \text{càw sábaajdíi böö} \) is (a) a statement    (b) a question
   (c) a command  (d) none of these.

5. \( \text{böö càw sábaajdíi} \) is (a) a question    (b) a statement
   (c) a command  (d) none of these.

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3a, 4b, 5d

3
6. kém sábáajdíi is (a) a command  (b) a question  (c) a statement  (d) none of these.

7. sábáajdíi is (a) a Noun Phrase  (b) a Verb Phrase  (c) a question word  (d) none of these.

8. bôo is (a) a Verb Phrase  (b) Noun Phrase  (c) question word. 

9. In càw sábáajdíi bôo , càw is (a) Noun Phrase  (b) Verb Phrase  (c) question.

10. In kém sábáajdíi, kém pôpcaj, càw dée, dée means something like (a) you  (b) but  (c) ...how about (you)  (d) it has no meaning.

   CYCLE 1.

M-1
pâakkaa an nli mûn pâakkaa pen This is a pen.
tó? an nli mûn tó? table This is a table.
 tâŋ-li an nli mûn tâŋ-li chair This is a chair.
pỳm an nli mûn pỳm book This is a book.
cìa an nli mûn cìa paper This is paper.

M-2
njàn an nli mûn njàn? what(?) What is this?
nàn an nàn mûn njàn? that What is that?
fôa an nàn mûn fôa wall That is a wall.

C-1
njàn A. an nli mûn njàn? A. What is this?
pâakkaa B. an nli mûn pâakkaa B. This is a pen.

   Answers: 6c, 7b, 8c, 9a, 10c
C-2

ŋān  A. an nàn mēn ŋān?  A. What is that?
tān--li  B. an nàn mēn tān-li  B. That is a chair.

NOTES

1) The Verb Phrase may consist of a Verb (V) with a Noun Phrase complement, thus VP — V + NP.

   Verb + NP

   mēn    pāakkaa
   'is    (a) pen'

   The following sentence is an example of the copula verb mēn followed by NP complement:

   NP + V + NP

   annī1  mēn    pāakkaa
   'This is (a) pen.'

2) The NP an nīl is made up of a Noun an plus a determiner nīl.an belongs to a special class of nouns that serve as substitutes for other nouns. They are called 'classifiers.' an can be used as a substitute for any inanimate noun (pen, chair, etc.). an nīl means 'this' or 'this one'.

3) tān li, tō?, pāakkaa and other nouns like this (things that can be counted) have no number indication in Lao, so they may refer to one or more than one thing according to the construction they occur in.
4) *njăn* 'what?' is a question word substitute. It substitutes for all inanimate nouns and for some other nouns in questions. Observe the following example:

\[ NP + V \text{ (copula)} + NP \]

**Question:** 
*an n̄lī*  
*mēn*  
*njăn*  
*(this is what)* 'What's this?'

**Response:** 
*an n̄lī*  
*mēn*  
*tō?'  
'*(This is (a) table.)*

*njăn* is in the same position in the sentence as the word it replaces. (NOTE: This is not the case with English *what*.

*What is this?  
This is a book.*

5. *mēn* 'be' is used to indicate the identification of things in the example given. It has other uses, but is much more restricted in use than 'be' in English.

**APPLICATION**

In the sentence *an n̄lī mēn pāakkāa*.

1. *an n̄lī* is (a) predicate  (b) subject  (c) Noun Phrase complement  (d) Verb Phrase.

2. *mēn* is (a) Noun Phrase  (b) question  (c) Verb  (d) complement of the verb.

3. *pāakkāa* is (a) Verb Phrase  (b) Noun Phrase complement of *mēn*  (c) question  (d) predicate.

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3b
In the sentence an n̄lī m̄s̄n njān

4. njān refers to (a) an animate noun (b) the Verb Phrase (c) an inanimate noun.

5. m̄s̄n is (a) a copula verb (b) it is used to identify the subject (c) it is a Noun Phrase (d) it is none of these.

6. an is a classifier and refers to things, not people. True or false?

7. n̄lī (a) means 'this' (b) it is a Noun Phrase (c) it is a determiner (d) it precedes the classifier.

8. tān li may mean (a) 'a chair' (b) 'chair' (c) 'the chair' (d) 'chairs' (e) 'the chairs' (f) any of these.

---

**CYCLE 2**

M-1

khâj an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa I, me This is my pen.

khâj

càw an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa you This is your pen.

càw

láaw an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa he, she This is his(her) pen.

láaw

phùakhāw an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa we (all) This is our pen.

phùakhāw

phùakkhâj an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa we This is our pen.

phùakkhâj

phùakcàw an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa you (pl.) This is your pen.

phùakcàw

khâcàw an n̄lī m̄s̄n pâakkaa they This is their pen.

khâcàw

---

Answers: 4c, 5a-b, 6true, 7a and c, 8f
M-2

sッドam an nli mēn sッドam pencil Whose pencil is this?
phǎj?
s sockaddr an nli mēn sockaddr chalk Whose chalk is this?
phǎj?
műak an nli mēn műak hat Whose hat is that?
phǎj?
sủa-fǒn an nli mēn sửa-fǒn raincoat Whose raincoat is this?
phǎj?
khán-hôm an nli mēn khán-hôm umbrella Whose umbrella is this?
phǎj?

Supplement to Cycle 2

M-1 khođthọt Excuse me. Pardon me. 'I'm sorry!'
I apologize.'

bọ pen njǎŋ It's O.K., Sure! That's all right! It does not matter!

khọpcaj Thank you.

bọ pen njǎŋ You are welcome. Don't mention it.

njǎŋ A. khođthọt, an nli mēn njǎŋ? Excuse me, what is this?
pâakkaa B. an nli mēn pâakkaa. This is a pen.
A. khođpcaj Thank you.
B. bọ pen njǎŋ You are welcome.
C-1

(pâakkaa) A. an nîl mèn pâakkaa  (pen) Whose pen is this?
    phâaj?
(khôj)  B. an nîl mèn pâakkaa  (I) This is my pen.
       khôj

NOTES

1) The NP may consist of N + NP in which the second noun or Noun substitute stands in the relationship of 'possessor'\(^1\) to the main or 'head' noun, as in this example:

Noun + NP (Possessor)

\[\text{pâakkaa} \quad \text{khôj}\]
pen I

'my pen'

\(^1\)The term 'possessor' implies a varied set of structural and semantic relationships besides simple ownership in Lao just as it does in English.
2) **phạj** 'who, whose, whom' is a question word substitute. It substitutes only for animate nouns and noun substitutes in questions.

\[
\text{Noun} \ + \ \text{NP (Possessor)}
\]

- pâakkaa
- láaw
- pen
- he
- 'his pen'

- pâakkaa
- phạj
- pen
- who
- 'whose pen'

**phạj** occupies the same position in the sentence as the noun it substitutes for.

3) Since the form of the pronoun does not change in Lao (like English I: me, my, mine, etc.) its structural relationship is determined by the kind of construction it is in, thus:

(a) As subject of a sentence

\[
\text{khạj} \ \text{sábaajdii}
\]

I am fine.

(b) As 'possessor' after the 'head' noun

\[
pâakkaa \ \text{khạj}
\]

pen
my
'my pen'

4) Although sex distinctions are not indicated in the Lao pronoun, number distinctions are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>khạj 'I'</td>
<td>phùak khạj 'we'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phùak háw 'we'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
càw 'you'  phùak càw 'you (plural)'
láaw 'he, she' khácàw 'they'

Both phùak hǎw and phùak khơj mean 'we'. phùak hǎw is used when the speaker wishes to include the hearer in his reference. phùak khơj is used when he does not wish to include the hearer.

None of these pronouns may be used to refer to inanimate object objects, thus láaw does not mean 'it' and khácàw does not refer to 'they' for objects.

APPLICATION

1. In the NP pỳm càw, càw can be translated as (a) you (b) yours, (c) your (d) none of these.

2. In the NP sỏdəm khácàw, khácàw means (a) they (b) their (c) theirs (d) none of these.

3. In the NP mứak láaw, láaw means (a) him (b) her (c) she (d) his (e) all of these (f) none of these.

4. In the NP pâakkaa khơj, khơj means (a) I, (b) my (c) me (d) mine.

5. In the NP tô' phùakcàw, phùakcàw means (a) one male person (b) more than one person (c) one female person.

6. In the NP cìa phạj, phạj (a) is a question word, (b) means 'what?' (c) means 'whose?' (d) has no meaning.

7. càw pâakkaa means (a) my pen (b) your pen (c) his pen (d) it has no meaning.

8. Translate the following NP into English: (a) sỏdəm phạj (b) mứak láaw (c) tân li càw (d) cìa khơj (e) pỳm khácaw (f) pâakkaa phùakcàw (g) sỳa fòn phạj (h) tô' phùakhaw

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3b and d, 4b, 5b, 6a and c, 7d, 8whose pencil, his/her hat, your (sg.) chair, my paper, their book, your (pl.) pen, whose raincoat, our table.
### CYCLE 3

#### M-1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lao</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ṭhóorkān</td>
<td>nì mēēn ṭhóorkān</td>
<td>office building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhóorkān</td>
<td>nì mēēn ṭhóorkān</td>
<td>office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhóonhīán</td>
<td>nì mēēn ṭhóonhīán</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhóonmōo</td>
<td>nì mēēn ṭhóonmōo</td>
<td>hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhóonsgāaj</td>
<td>nì mēēn ṭhóonsgāaj</td>
<td>post office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### M-2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lao</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tālāat</td>
<td>mēēn lēsw, nì mēēn</td>
<td>market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tālāat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭhóonhēem</td>
<td>mēēn lēsw, nì mēēn</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ṭhóonhēem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āhān aahān</td>
<td>mēēn lēsw, nì mēēn</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>āhān aahān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>komtamālāt</td>
<td>mēēn lēsw, nì mēēn</td>
<td>police station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>komtamālāt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khāaj thāhān</td>
<td>mēēn lēsw, nì mēēn</td>
<td>military base</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C-1

hoôngheём  A. nli mēen hoôngheём  hotel  A. Is this a hotel?
   bōo?
   B. mēen lēew, nli mēen  B. Yes, this is a
   hoôngheём  hotel.

-------------

C-2

pỳm  A. an nli mēen pỳm càw bōo  book  A. Is this your book?
   B. mēen lēew, an nli mēen  B. Yes, this is my
   pỳm khēj  book.

-------------

C-3  A. an nli mēen pỳm phāj,  A. Whose book is this? Is
    pỳm càw bōo?  it yours?
   B. mēen lēew, an nli mēen  B. Yes, this is my book.
    pỳm khēj

-------------

บั้กจุนกัฐภูมิ (1) และ (2) ที่นี่ทั้งหมดจะเป็นอยู่ตามที่ท่าน พบอยู่ ท่านจะต้องติดใจดูอยู่ในบุญบารมีสูงสุด และเล่าสู่กัฐภูมิ โดยอธิบาย ติดตามถูกต้องด้วย แล้วให้เข้าใจในกัฐภูมิที่นี่อย่างจริงจัง.

13
NOTES

1) One type of Noun Compound is composed of Noun + Noun, in which the second noun stands in a 'modifier' relationship to the first or head noun. The following are examples:

\[
\text{Noun} + \text{Noun ('Modifier')}\\
\]

1) hàan aahǎan
    shop   food
    'restaurant'

2) hóon mǒo
    building   medical doctor
    'hospital'

3) khàaj thāhǎan
    camp     military persons
    'camp, fort'

4) sýa fôn
    clothing  rain
    'raincoat'

Another type of Noun Compound is made up of Noun + Verb and is similar to a Sentence:

\[
\text{Noun} + \text{Verb}\\
\]

1) sǒo dam
    stick    black
    'pencil'

2) khán hōm
    instrument to shade
    'umbrella'
2) nìi means 'here, this, this one' when it occurs alone. It may also occur after the classifier as a determiner, as in an nìi 'this, this one'.

3) Observe the relationship between a question with mēen boo and its affirmative response:

Question: NP + mēen + NP + boo
nìi mēen hōoṁmōo boo

Affirmative Response: mēen lēew

Both the Subject NP and the Complement NP are usually absent in the response; however, the response may contain a complete confirmation after the mēen lēew response, as follows:

Question: nìi mēen hōoṁmōo boo?
Response: mēen lēew, nìi mēen hōoṁmōo

APPLICATION

1. In the Noun Compound sŷa fôn, sŷa is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier of fôn (c) the classifier (d) none of these.

2. In the Noun Compound hàån aahšan, aahšan is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier (c) a question word (d) none of these.

3) In the Noun Compound hōoṁ hîán, hîán is (a) a Noun, (b) a verb (c) VP (d) none of these.

4. khán hom is (a) a NP (b) VP (c) S (d) Noun Compound (e) none of these (f) all of these.

5. dam sōo means (a) black stick (b) pencil (c) pen (d) it is meaningless.

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3b, 4a and d, 5d
6. 'Fort' is translated into Lao, as (a) sya thāhān (b) khāaj thāhān (c) hōoŋ thāhān (d) khāaj aahāan (e) thāhān khāaj.

7. 'Raincoat' is translated into Lao as (a) fŏn sya (b) fŏn mŏo (c) sya fŏn (d) sya pỳm (e) sya fŏn.

8. A correct response to the question nli meen hōoŋmŏo boo is (a) lĕew (b) lĕew bŏo (c) meen lĕew (d) meen (e) meen bŏo (f) meen lĕew, nli meen hōoŋ mŏo

9. If you wanted to find out if something was a book, what would you say?

10. If you wanted to find out if a certain umbrella belonged to a particular person, what would you say?

CYCLE 4

M-1

tālāat  khācâw si paj  market  They are going to the market.
tālāat

hōoŋhīan  khācâw si paj  school  They are going to school.
hōoŋhīan

hōonśāj  khācâw si paj  post office  They are going to the post office.
hōonśāj

hōonmŏo  khācâw si paj  hospital  They are going to the hospital.
hōonmŏo

komtamlūat  khācâw si paj  police  They are going to the police station.
koptamlūat

Answers: 6b, 7c, 8c,d,f, 9(an) nli meen pỳm bŏo, 10(an) nli meen khán hōm cāw bŏo (or) (an) nli meen khán hōm phăaj
| M-2 | càw | càw si paj sǎj? | you | Where are you going? |
|     | láaw | láaw si paj sǎj? | he, she | Where is he going? |
|     | phùakháw | phùakháw si paj sǎj? | we | Where are we going? |
|     | phùakcàw | phùakcàw si paj sǎj? | you (pl.) | Where are you going? |
|     | khácàw | khácàw si paj sǎj? | they | Where are they going? |

| M-3 | hòon- | càw si paj hòon- | theatre | Are you going to the theatre? |
|     | sǐńée | sǐńée bōo? | | |
| wāt | càw si paj wāt bōo? | temple | Are you going to the temple? |
| hàan- | càw si paj hàan- | shoe store | Are you going to the shoe store? |
|     | khǎaj-kêep bōo? | | |
| hàan sǐem- | càw si paj hàan-sǐem | beauty-parlor | Are you going to the beauty parlor? |
|     | sǔaj bōo? | | |
| hòonkaan- | càw si paj hòonkaan- | custom house | Are you going to the custom house? |
|     | pháasǐi bōo? | | |
| hòonphǐm | càw si paj hòonphǐm | printing office | Are you going to the printing office? |
|     | bōo bōo bōo | | |

| M-4 | paj | paj | to go | Yes, I'm going. |
|     | bōo | bōo bōo | no | No, I am not going. |
C-1
A. càw si paj hàan khảaj-kèep bòo? A. Are you going to the shoe store?
B. paj, khêj si paj hàan-khảaj kèep B. Yes, I am going to the shoe store.

C-2
A. càw si paj hòọŋkaaŋ-pháasīl bòo? A. Are you going to the custom house?
B. bòo, bòo paj B. No, I'm not going.

C-3
láaw A. láaw si paj sǎj? he, she A. Where is he going?
hòọŋhian B. láaw si paj school B. He is going to school.
hòọŋhian

C-4
A. càw si paj hòọnsǎaj bòo? A. Are you going to the post office?
B. mèèn lèzw, khêj si paj hòọnsǎaj B. Yes, I'm going to the post office.


NOTES

1) Verbs of motion frequently have locative (place word) complements.

\[ \text{NP} + \text{Pre-V + V (motion)} + \text{Loc} \]

khácàw  si  paj  tálâat

\{will go \}
\{are going (to the) market \}

No relational word is necessary between the verb of motion and the place expression.

2) săj 'where' is a question word that stands in a substitute relationship with locatives:

Question:  càw si paj săj ?  'Where are you going?'

Response:  khôj si paj tálâat  'I'm going to the market.'

si is a pre-verb used to indicate future action here.

3) mèen lèew is an acceptable affirmative response to any question with boō as the question word.

Question:  càw si paj hóonsāaj  Are you going to Post Office?  boō?

Affirmative  mèen lèew, (khôj sī  Yes, (I'm going to the Post Office).

Response:  paj hóonsāaj

The confirmation part of the response is optional, although fairly common.
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj tálâat, the action (a) has already taken place  (b) will take place in the future  (c) takes place regularly  (d) is taking place at present  (e) it's impossible to tell when the action takes place.

2. In the sentence kháćaw si paj hóomstå, hóomstå is (a) NP, (b) VP  (c) locative  (d) all of these.

3. In the sentence above, si paj is (a) a pre-verb + V  (b) NP  (c) VP  (d) the predicate.

4. Which of the following is a possible response to the question paj sāj ? : (a) paj tálâat  (b) hóonsāaj  (c) mën lëw (d) paj pỳm  (e) khâj si paj.

5. Which of the following is a correct response to the question phuakcaw si paj komtamlâat bōo : (a) si paj  (b) cāw bōo (c) paj lëw  (d) mën lëw, phuakhaw si paj komtamlâat (f) paj  (g) All except b are possible answers.

CYCLE 5

M-1

càw si paj hóonhian mën bōo?  You are going to school aren't you?

an nli mën pāakkaa mën bōo?  This is a pen, isn't it?

láaw si paj khàaj-thāhān mën bōo?  He's going to the military base, isn't he?

láaw si paj hàan aahān mën bōo?  He is going to the restaurant, isn't he?

nli mën komtamlâat mën bōo?  This is the police station, isn't it?

Answers: 1b and d, 2a and c, 3a, 4a, 5g
M-2

บํ่อง มํ่หนน ลาว สิ บํอง แพจ หองحما่ม
ลาว สิ แพจ หาน อาน อาน

บํอง มํ่หนน แยน นิล บํอง มํ่หนน ปํยม แยน นิล มํ่หนน คา

บํอง มํ่หนน ขี่จิ สิ บํอง แพจ หองกาน
ขี่จิ สิ แพจ หองกาน

บํอง มํ่หนน นิล บํอง มํ่หนน หองحما่ม

นิล มํ่หนน หาน อาน อาน

No, he is not going to the hotel.
He is going to the restaurant.
No, this is not a book.
This is paper.
No, I'm not going to the office building.
I'm going to the Post Office.
No, this is not the hotel.
This is the restaurant.

C-1

(หาน อาน อาน) A. ลาว สิ แพจ หาน อาน อาน มํ่หนน บํอง?

B. บํอง มํ่หนน ลาว สิ แพจ หองحما่ม

restaurant He is going to the restaurant isn't he?
hotel No, he is going to the hotel.
C-2

(tó?) A. an níi mèen tó?, table This is a table, mèen bōo?

(tăn li) B. bōo mèen, an níi chair No, this is a mèen tăn li chair.

C-3

(hóọŋkaan) A. níi mèen hóọŋkaan, office This is an office mèen bōo?

(hóọŋhían) B. bōo mèen, níi bōo classroom No, this is not mèen hóọŋkaan, an office. This níi mèen hóọŋhían is a classroom.

NOTES

1) mèen bōo can be attached to any statement (S + mèen bōo). The usual affirmative response is mèen lèsw with or without confirmatory statement. The usual negative response is bōo mèen plus a Statement of the actual facts.

   Question: láaw si paj hàan aahān, mèen bōo?
   Affirmative Response: mèen lèsw, (láaw si paj hàan aahān)
   Negative Response: bōo mèen, láaw si paj hóọnhém
APPLICATION

1. Which of the following responses is a correct negative response to láaw si paj hâan aahâan, meen bôo? (a) bôô, (b) bôô meen, (c) bôô paj, (d) bôô hâan aahâan (e) bôô meen, láaw si paj hoonhheem.

2. Which of these sentences is correct (a) láaw bôô si paj hoonhîan, (b) láaw si bôô paj hoonhîan, (c) láaw si paj bôô hoonhîan, (d) láaw bôô paj si hoonhîan.

3. Which of these sentences is correct (a) nîî meen bôô hoonhheem, (b) nîî bôô meen hoonhheem, (c) hoonhheem bôô nîî, (d) bôô nîî meen hoonhheem.

4. Disagree with this statement: láaw si paj hoonkaan.

5. Disagree with this sentence: an nîî meen pyûm.

6. Translate the following sentences into English (a) khaçàw si paj hoonkaan, (b) khâj si bôô paj talâat, (c) phîuakcaw si paj hân aahâan, meen bôô? (d) caw si bôô paj komtamlûat, meen bôô? (e) láaw si paj khaajthahâan, (f) caw si paj sâj, (g) phûakhâw si bôô paj hoonmôo, (h) caw si paj hoonhheem, meen bôô?

Answers: 1b and e, 2b, 3b, 4láaw si bôô paj hoonkaan, 5nîî bôô meen pyûm, 6(a) They're going to the office. (b) I'm not going to the market. (c) You're going to the restaurant, aren't you? (d) You're not going to the Police Station, are you? (e) We're not going to the army post. (f) Where are you going? (g) We're not going to the hospital. (h) You're going to the hotel, aren't you?
CYCLE 6

M-1

súksōmbuun khọj syy súksōmbuun Souksomboun My name is Souksomboun.

mālīcan khọj syy mālīcan Malichanh My name is Malichanh.

láaw láaw syy mālīcan she Her name is Malichanh.

khôn phuu nli syy mālīcan. this person This person's name is Malichanh.

nāaj khūu khọj syy mālīcan my teacher My teacher's name is Malichanh.

M-2

càw càw syy njān? you What's your name?

nāk hiān nāk hiān phuu nli syy njān? this student What's this student's name?

phuu nli thāhān phuu nli syy njān? this serviceman What's this serviceman's name?

thāhān phuu nli syy njān? that policeman What's that policeman's name?

tamlūat tamlūat phuu nān syy njān? that government official What's that government official's name?

phuu nān khāalāatsākaan phuu nān syy njān?
C-1

càw
A. càw syy njān? you What's your name?
B. khôj syy... My name is...

C-2

nākhían A. nākhían càw syy... your Your student's name
       meèn bôo? student is..., isn't it?
B. bôo meèn, nākhían No, my student's
       khôj syy... name is...

NOTES

1) The verb syy 'to be named' requires an animate noun (or noun substitute) as a subject and a personal name as complement:

\[
\text{NP} + \text{syy} + \text{NP}
\]

làaw syy mālīcan
'She is named Malichanh.'

A further restriction in this type of sentence is that the name must be appropriate (in terms of sex) to the subject. Malichanh is a female name; Souksomboun is a male name.

The Noun Complement of syy may be replaced by njān in questions:

Question: càw syy njān 'What's your name?'
Response: khôj syy khāmdeèn 'My name's Khamdaeng.'
2) Since Lao nouns are not marked for number or for the definite: indefinite category, the Noun Phrase is marked only if it contains a Classifier Phrase. If it contains Classifier+Determiner, it is marked as definite (not generic). Compare the marked and unmarked examples below:

Generic: thāḥāan
   '(a) soldier'
   'soldiers'

Definite: thāḥāan phūū nī
   'This soldier'

phūū is a classifier for human nouns. It is used only in the singular. nī is a determiner. It refers to something near the speaker. phūū nī is one type of classifier phrase. nān is also a determiner. It refers to something not near the speaker.

APPLICATION

1. A possible answer to the question cāw sīy nīn is (a) khāj mēn komtamlūat (b) khāj sīy hōŋkaan (c) khāj sīy mālīcan (d) khāj bōo sīy.

2. Which of the following sentences is correct Lao: (a) nāaj khūu laaw sīy suksōmbuun (b) laaw sīy nākhiān (c) tō' sīy nīn (d) pāakkāa sīy tān li (e) laaw mēn mālīcan.

3. Translate the following NP into English: (a) nākhiān phūū nī (b) thāḥāan phūū nī (c) khālāatsākaan phūū nān (d) tamlūat phūū nān (e) khōn phūū nī (f) nāaj khūu phūū nān.

4) Match the questions with correct answers:

   (a) cāw sīy nīn? (a) mēn lēsw
   (b) laaw sīy Peter, mēn bōo? (b) khāj si paj tālāat
   (c) annīlī mēn tō? bōo? (c) khāj sīy mālīcan
   (d) cāw si paj sāj? (d) mēn lēsw, annīlī mēn tō?

Answers: 1c, 2a, 3this student, this serviceman, that government official, that policeman, this person, that teacher 4a/c, b/a, c/d, d/b
CYCLE 7

M-1

siunh  lâaw siunh boo?  to be tall,  Is he tall?  high
nâam  lâaw nâam boo?  to be pretty  Is she pretty?
tûj  lâaw tûj boo?  to be fat  Is he fat?
côûj  lâaw côûj boo?  to be skinny  Is she skinny?
tâm  lâaw tôm boo?  to be short,  Is he short?  low
dîi  lâaw dîi boo?  to be good  Is he good?

M-2

dîi  lâaw pen khôn dîi  good  He is a good person,  meên boo?  isn't he?
cadjîi  lâaw pen khôn cadjîi  kind  He is a kind person,  meên boo?  isn't he?
sûa  lâaw pen khôn sûa  bad  He is a bad person,  meên boo?  isn't he?
kâahân  lâaw pen khôn kâahân  courageous  He is a courageous  meên boo?  person, isn't he?
dûûmûn  lâaw pen khôn dûûmûn  studious  He is a studious  meên boo?  person, isn't he?
sâlûat  lâaw pen khôn sâlûat  intelligent  He is an intelligent  meên boo?  person, isn't he?
M-3

khūnheēn lāaw pen khon
khūnheēn lāaj
strong
He is a very strong person.

sōn-ee lāaw pen khon
sōn-ee lāaj
weak
He is a very weak person.

caj-sōn lāaw pen khon
caj-sōn lāaj
softhearted
He is a very soft-hearted person.

cajkhēēn lāaw pen khon
cajkhēēn lāaj
hardhearted
He is a very hard-hearted person.

khīkhāan lāaw pen khon
khīkhāan lāaj
lazy
He is a very lazy person.

C-1

A. lāaw sūn bōc?
B. sūn
A. Is he tall?
B. Yes, he is.

C-2

A. lāaw pen khon (dū?mān) mēn bōc?
B. mēn lēsē, lāaw pen khon (dū?mān) lāaj
A. He is a (studious) person, isn't he?
B. Yes, he is a very (studious) person.
**CYCLE 8**

**M-1**

- **súphàap**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i
  - súphàap lāaj
  - to be polite
  - This person is very polite.

- **sál̄at**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i
  - sál̄at lāaj
  - intelligent
  - This person is very intelligent.

- **nōo**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i
  - nōo lāaj
  - stupid
  - This person is very stupid.

- **uàn**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i uăn lāaj
  - fat
  - This person is very fat.

- **coo̍j**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i
  - coo̍j lāaj
  - skinny
  - This person is very skinny.

- **dīi**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i dīi lāaj
  - good
  - This person is very good.

- **sūn̄**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i
  - sūn̄ lāaj
  - tall, high
  - This person is very tall.

- **tla**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i tla lāaj
  - short (height)
  - This person is very short.

- **tām**
  - khón phúu n̄l̄i tām lāaj
  - short (height)
  - This person is very short.

**M-2**

- **phúu-njīn**
  - phúu-njīn phúu nān
  - pen khón náam
  - woman
  - That woman is a pretty person.

- **phúu-sāaw**
  - phúu-sāaw phúu nān
  - pen khón náam
  - unmarried woman
  - That unmarried woman is a pretty person.

- **nākhīan njīn**
  - nākhīan njīn phúu nān
  - pen khón náam
  - girl student
  - That girl student is a pretty person.
léekhǎanū-kaan phūū nàn pen khôn ɲáam
phūūbaaw phūū nàn pen khôn ɲáam
sáaj-nūm phūū nàn pen khôn ɲáam

secretary
unmarried man
young man

secretary
That secretary is a pretty person.
That unmarried man is handsome person.
That young man is a handsome person.

M-3

pʰyan càw phūū nàn pen khôn cǎŋdaj?
khāalaatsā-kaan phūū nàn pen khôn cǎŋdaj?
náaj-thāhǎan phūū nàn pen khôn cǎŋdaj?
náaj-tamluát phūū nàn pen khôn cǎŋdaj?
khôn-sōŋ-nǎŋʂyə phūū nàn pen khôn cǎŋdaj?
náaj-pháasəa phuu nàn pen khôn cǎŋdaj?

M-3

your friend
friend
government official
military officer
police officer
mailman
interpreter

What sort of person is that friend of yours?
What sort of person is that government official?
What sort of person is that military officer?
What sort of person is that police officer?
What sort of person is that mailman?
What sort of person is that interpreter?
C-1
A. phūū njǐŋ phūū nī njām boɔ? A. Is this woman pretty?
B. láaw njām láaj B. She is very pretty.

C-2
A. sāaj-nūm phūū nān pen khōn čardaj? A. What sort of person is that young man?
B. láaw pen khōn sūŋ. B. He is a tall person.

NOTES
1) Words like sūŋ 'tall', dii 'good' are called stative verbs (Vs). They function as the Main Verb (MV) in sentences describing the state or condition of something or someone.

\[
\text{NP} \quad + \quad \text{Vs}
\]

\[
\text{lāaw} \quad \text{sūŋ}
\]

'He (is) tall.'

Since words having similar meanings are adjectives in English, 'be' must be added in translation.

2) The following are transformations of the sentence lāaw sūŋ (NP + Vs):

   Negative statement: lāaw bōō sūŋ
                      'He isn't tall.'

   Affirmative question: lāaw sūŋ boɔ?
                         'Is he tall?'

   Affirmative response: sūŋ
                         'Yes, he is.'

   Negative response: bōō sūŋ (lāaj)
                      'No, not (very) tall.'

1 These notes and the application are for use with cycles 7 and 8.
3) Stative verbs may also function as modifiers of NP:

\[
\text{NP} + V_S
\]

không  khiphan
(person lazy)
'lazy person'

4) NP of the type above often occur in sentences with pen as the copula verb:

\[
\text{NP} + \text{pen} + \text{NP}
\]

làaw  pen  khip sählät
'He's an intelligent person.'

mēn bōo may be added to form a question.

5) làaj occurs after V_S as an intensifier: sǔun làaj 'very tall', etc.

6) Both khip nēen 'strong, powerful' and jōn ee 'weak, frail, feeble' refer to physical strength.

7) Both tài and tām may be used to refer to the shortness of a person, but tām is usually used in referring to objects.

8) cāndaj 'what kind of, what sort of' is used with khip to inquire about a person's personal traits or physical features:

Question: làaw pen khip cāndaj? What sort of person is she?'

Answer: làaw pen khip nāam làaj
She's a very pretty person.'

Answer: làaw nāam làaj
She's very pretty.'
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence càw súphàap, súphàap is (a) NP, (b) VP, (c) Q (d) V_s (e) none of these.

2. nūo làaj is probably (a) a question (b) a negative statement, (c) an affirmative response (d) a negative response.

3. di1 bɔɔ is probably (a) a negative statement (b) a question (c) NP (d) negative response (e) none of these.

4. Which of these sentences has an error in it? (a) càw bɔɔ tìa (b) làaw bɔɔ pen sàlāat (c) khōj cəɔj (d) khōn phuu nìì nūo làaj.

5. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) What sort of person are you? (b) That young man is very skinny. (c) That friend of yours is stupid, isn't he? (d) I'm not a very courageous person. (f) She's not very fat. (g) Is she tall?

6. In the sentence khōn phuu nìì nūo làaj, phuu is (a) a noun (b) a verb (c) V_s (d) classifier (e) determiner.

7. In the NP khōn cəɔj, cəɔj is (a) NP (b) V_s (c) Q (d) modifier of khōn (e) none of these.

8. In the VP di1 làaj, làaj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) negative (d) intensifier of di1.

Answers: 1b and d, 2c, 3b, 4b, 5(a) càw pen khōn cāndaj (b) sāaj nūm phuu nān cəɔj làaj (c) phīan caw phuu nān nūo, mēen bɔɔ (d) khōj bɔɔ pen khōn kāahān làaj (e) làaw bɔɔ tūj (uan) làaj (f) làaw sūuŋ bɔɔ, 6a and d, 7b and d, 8d.
CYCLE 9

M-1

*amëelikan*  càw pen khön amëelikan, mëen boo?  American  Are you an American?

*làaw*  càw pen khön làaw, mëen boo?  Laotian  Are you a Laotian?

*thâj*  càw pen khön thâj, mëen boo?  Thai  Are you a Thai?

*khâmëen*  càw pen khön khâmëen, mëen boo?  Cambodian  Are you a Cambodian?

*ankìt*  càw pen khön ankìt, mëen boo?  Englishman  Are you an Englishman?

*ciin*  càw pen khön ciin, mëen boo?  Chinese  Are you a Chinese

M-2

*amëelikan*  mëen lèsw, khôj pen khön amëelikan.  American  Yes, I am an American.

*njìipün*  mëen lèsw, khôj pen khön njìipün  Japanese  Yes, I am a Japanese.

*wiàtnáam*  mëen lèsw, khôj pen khön wiàtnáam  Vietnamese  Yes, I am a Vietnamese.

*phämàa*  mëen lèsw, khôj pen khön phämàa  Burmese  Yes, I am a Burmese.

*fálàn*  mëen lèsw, khôj pen khön fálàn  French  Yes, I am a Frenchman.

*jeelàmàn*  mëen lèsw, khôj pen khön jeelàmàn  German  Yes, I am a German.
C-1

(अंकित) A. $c$ $w$ $p$ $k$ $h$ $n$ (अंकित), Englishman  
B. $m$ $k$ $n$ $b$ $w$ $k$ $h$ $n$ (अंकित).

A. Are you an Englishman?
B. Yes, I am an Englishman.

C-2

(नामक्षु) A. (नामक्षु) $p$ $h$ $n$ $a$ $n$ pen $k$ $h$ $n$ अंकित, 
B. $b$ $w$ $m$ $k$ $n$ $b$ $w$ $k$ $h$ $n$ $p$ $h$ $n$ $a$ $n$ pen अंकित. 

A. Is that teacher an Englishman?
B. No, that teacher is not an Englishman.

(अमेलिकन) B. $b$ $w$ $m$ $k$ $n$, नामक्षु $p$ $h$ $n$ अंकित. 

A. Is that teacher an American?
B. No, that teacher is not an American.
NOTES

1) The Noun khôn 'person' + Name of Country is used to refer to nationals of any country.

\[
\text{Noun} \quad + \quad \text{Noun} \\
\text{khôn} \quad \quad \text{láaw} \\
\text{Person} \quad \quad \text{Laos} \\
\text{'a Laotian'}
\]

2) pen 'be' is a copula verb (like mēn) and occurs only in constructions of this type: NP + pen + NP.

\[
\text{NP} \quad + \quad \text{pen} \quad + \quad \text{NP} \\
càw \quad \quad \text{pen} \quad \quad \text{khôn láaw} \\
\text{'You are a Lao'}
\]

3) Sentences with pen as the linking verb can be converted to questions by adding mēn boō. mēn boō is normally used when asking for confirmation of a fact. The response follows the usual pattern.

**Statement:**
\[
càw \quad \text{pen} \quad \text{khôn tháj} \\
\text{'You are a Thai'}
\]

**Question:**
\[
càw \quad \text{pen} \quad \text{khôn tháj}, \quad \text{mēn boō}? \\
\text{'Are you a Thai'}?
\]

**Affirmative Response:**
\[
\text{mēn lèsw}, \quad (\text{khôj pen khôn tháj}) \\
\text{'Yes, I'm Thai'}.
\]

**Negative Response:**
\[
\text{boō mēn}, \quad \text{khôj pen khôn láaw} \\
\text{'No, I'm a Lao'}.
\]
APPLICATION

1. Answer the following questions with the correct information:
   (a) caw syv njāŋ? (b) caw pen khōn luaaw, meēn bōo?

2. Translate the following NP: (a) khōn aŋkīt (b) thāhān phūu nī (c) khācāw (d) khōn ciin (e) khōn luaaw phūu nī

3. In the NP mākhīān phūu nān, phūu is (a) NP, (b) determiner, (c) a classifier (d) a question word (e) it refers to people.

4. What would you say to find out if a serviceman you saw was a German?

5. In answer to a question you say that your teacher is English.

6. You are asked if you are a Thai. You say that you are not, but that you are an American.

CYCLE 10

M-1

sāhārat  khōj māa cāak sāhārat  U.S.A.  I'm from the USA.
amēelīka  amēelīka
pāthēet  khōj māa cāak pāthēet  Laos  I'm from Laos.
lāaw  lāaw
pāthēet  khōj māa cāak pāthēet  Thailand  I'm from Thailand.
thāj  thāj
pāthēet  khōj māa cāak pāthēet  Vietnam  I'm from Vietnam.
wīatnāam  wīatnāam

Answers: 1. Give factual information. 2(a) Englishman (b) this serviceman (c) they (d) a Chinese (e) this Lao 3(c and e) 4 thāhān phūu nān pen khōn jeelāmān, meēn bōo; 5 nāaj khūu khōj pen khōn aŋkīt, bōo meēn, khōj bōo pen khōn thāj, khōj pen khōn amēelīkan
 páthèet  khɔj màa câak páthèet  China  I'm from China.
ciin        ciin
 páthèet  khɔj màa câak páthèet  England  I'm from England.
ankan        anıkìt

M-2
càw         càw màa câak páthèet        you    What country are you from?
daj?        daj?
khon fàlàng  khon fàlàng màa câak    French-    What country are Frenchmen from?
páthèet daj?
akhian      nakhian phuu nì màa        this    What country is this student from?
phuu nì     câak páthèet daj?        student
khon phuu    khon phuu nàn màa câak    that    What country is that person from?
nàn         nàn       câak páthèet daj?
nàajkhùu     nàajkhùu phuu nàn màa    that    What country is that teacher from?
phuu nàn     câak páthèet daj?

C-1
(khон        A. khон améelìkan màa    Americans  A. What country are Americans from?
améelìkan)  câak páthèet daj?

(sáhárát    B. khon améelìkan màa    the U.S.A.  B. Americans are from the U.S.A.
améelìka)  câak sáhárát
améelìka

อวดมาที่สถานที่ใดขึ้นก็ตาม ข้ามกล้าจะยกถึงเมื่อมองถึงตัวมันด้วยกัน ทําผิดก็จ้งให้ ทําผิดผูกสิ่ง ด้วยสมาธิแบบแบบอย่างมากจะต้องมิได้ ทําผิดผูกสิ่งแบบแบบอย่างมาก

38
C-2

(sảj) A. càw màа câak sảj? where Where are you from?
(páthèet B. khşij màа câak páthèet Laos I'm from Laos.
làaw) làaw?

NOTES

1) The Main Verb (MV) may be composed of two or more individual verbs in a series. The verb màа 'to come' (like pàj 'to go' and other verbs of motion) may be followed by verbs showing direction of motion (like câak 'to move) away from').

NP    MV    NP (Loc)
khşij màа câak sánhàrat améëlìka
'I came from the United States. am coming

Since there is no time indication in this sentence, màа may refer to present, past, or future time.

2) daji 'which' is a question word substitute. It substitutes for the determiners (nìi, nàn), for names, and some other nouns.

Question: páthèet daji? 'Which country?'
Response 1: páthèet cîin 'China'
Response 2: páthèet nìi 'This country.'
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence, khɔj máa câak pàthèque lāaw, máa câak is (a) (b) NP (c) VP (d) MV (e) Q (d) Q (e) determiner.

2. In the sentence above, pàthèque lāaw is (a) VP (b) Q (c) NP (d) Locative (e) S.

3. In the sentence above, the action is (a) in the past (b) the future (c) in progress, (d) none of these.

4. nakhían phuu nìi refers to (a) one person (b) two persons (c) more than two (d) it is unclear.

5. In the Vb máa câak, câak is (a) NP (b) V (c) preposition (d) VP.

6. In the Noun Compound sáhárát améelīka, sáhárát probably means (a) country (b) America (c) United States (d) nation (e) none of these.

7. China is translated into Lao as (a) ciin (b) ciin pàthèque (c) pàthèque ciin (d) phuu ciin.

8. 'This teacher of mine!' would be translated into Lao as: (a) náaj khuu caw nìi (b) náaj khuu phuu nìi khɔj (c) náaj khuu khɔj phuu nìi (d) náaj khuu caw phuu nìi.

Answers: 1c, 2c and d, 3a and c, 4a, 5b, 6c, 7c, 8c
CYCLE 11

M-1

 migli wiancan

 migli wiancan juu sâj?

 khiên sêedoôn

 khiên sêedoôn juu sâj?

 migli wôosîntan

 migli wôosîntan juu sâj?

 rât mínísöotâà

 rât mínísöotâà juu sâj?

 rât khâalîfôônia

 rât khâalîfôônia juu sâj?

 bån sîikhâj

 băn sîikâj juu sâj?

 khiên hûaphân

 khiên hûaphân juu sâj?

 bån kên

 băn kên juu sâj?
M-2

myan wiancan

myan wiancan juu naj pathet laaw

khuen seedoon

khuen seedoon juu naj pathet laaw

myan wosintan

myan wosintan juu naj sahrat amelika

ban sikhaj

ban sikhaj juu naj myan wiancan

rat khalifonia

rat khalifonia juu naj sahrat amelika

myan sainson

myan sainson juu naj pathet wiatnham

khuen huaphan

myan samnya juu naj khuen huaphan

The city of Vientiane
The city of Vientiane is in Laos.
The province of Sedone.
The province of Sedone is in Laos.
Washington, D.C.
Washington, D.C. is in the United States of America.
The village of Sikhay
The village of Sikhay is in Vientiane.
State of California
The State of California is in the U.S.A.
Saigon
Saigon is in Vietnam.

Houa Phan
Sam Neua is in the province of Houa Phan.
G-1

(bàan náathóon)
A. bàan náathóon juu săj?

(mýaŋ phóonhóon)
B. bàan náathóon juu náj
mýaŋ phóonhóon

(mýaŋ phóonhóon)
A. mýaŋ phóonhóon juu săj?

(khṳen wiancan)
B. mýaŋ phóonhóon juu náj
khṳen wiancan

(kh téléphone)
A. kh폰h téléphone juu săj?

(páthèet láaw)
B. kh폰h téléphone juu náj
páthèet láaw

The village of Nathong.
The city of Phonhong.
The village of Nathong is in the city of Phonhong.
The city of Phonhong.
Where is the city of Phonhong?
The province of Vientiane.
The city of Phonhong is in the province of Vientiane.
The province of Vientiane.
Where is the province of Vientiane?
Laos.
The province of Vientiane is in Laos.
C-2

(hóonhíán càw) 
A. hóonhíán càw juu sǎj? Where is your school?

(myān āalíntán) 
B. hóonhíán khīj juu náj My school is in Arlington.
myān āalíntán

(myān āalíntán) 
A. myān āalíntán juu sǎj? Where is Arlington?

(rāt wēecíníá) 
B. myān āalíntán juu náj Arlington is in the State
rāt wēecíníá of Virginia.

(rāt wēecíníá) 
A. rāt wēecíníá juu sǎj? Where is the State of
Virginia?

(sáhārāt améelíkkaa) 
B. rāt wēecíníá juu náj The State of Virginia is
sáhārāt améelíkkaa in the United States.

',
NOTES

1) This sentence type may be used to indicate geographical location:

\[
\text{NP} + \text{juu} + \text{LOC}
\]

\[
\text{мышл สัมณญา} \quad \text{juu} \quad \text{naj} \quad \text{ขุน} \quad \text{หัวภัน}
\]

'Sam Neua is located in the province of Hona-phan.'

2) The verb \text{juu} 'to be located in' is followed by Locatives (LOC). The term 'locative' refers to place expressions. It includes NP, Prep. + NP, and Adverbs of Place.

3) In questions LOC is replaced by \text{saj} 'Where (at)?'

4) \text{บ้าน} 'village', \text{мыш} 'city', and \text{ขุน} 'province' are all political and administrative divisions in Laos.

APPLICATION

1. Answer these questions giving correct information: (a) \text{мышл} \text{ว่า} \text{คัน} \text{juu} \text{saj} (b) \text{мышл} \text{แสง} \text{นี้} \text{juu} \text{naj} \text{พาเที่ย} \text{วิถี} \text{นา} \text{จำ} \text{nap} \text{ว} \text{หน} \text{เป} \text{น} \text{บ} (c) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{lèu}, \text{พัก} \text{ขา} \text{ว} \text{pen} \text{ท} \text{น} \text{jìpùn}. (d) \text{พา} \text{ฮ} \text{า} \text{ท} \text{จ} \text{ák} \text{a} \text{ka}.

2. Provide a possible question to each of these answers: (a) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{มี} \text{เล} \text{น} \text{lèu}, \text{làaw} \text{สี} \text{ป} \text{า} \text{ห} \text{ฮ} \text{ี} \text{mem}. (b) \text{ขุน} \text{พล} \text{ชี} \text{เข} \text{จ} \text{uu} \text{naj} \text{พา} \text{เที่} \text{ท} \text{ี} \text{ล} \text{àaw}. (c) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{lèu}, \text{พัก} \text{ขา} \text{ว} \text{pen} \text{ท} \text{น} \text{jìpùn}. (d) \text{พา} \text{ฮ} \text{า} \text{ท} \text{จ} \text{ák} \text{a}.

3. Fill in the blanks with the correct word: (a) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{ค} \text{ัน} \text{juu} \text{naj} \text{ persuasive} \text{ka}. (b) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{น} \text{lèu}, \text{ร} \text{ท} \text{ี} \text{ก} \text{อ} \text{ค} \text{jkok} \text{juu} \text{naj} \text{ persuasive} \text{ka}. (c) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{น} \text{จำ} \text{nap} \text{ท} \text{ี} \text{ฮ} \text{ี} \text{mem}. (d) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{ค} \text{ัน} \text{juu} \text{naj} \text{làaw}.

Answers: 1(a) \text{juu} \text{naj} \text{พา} \text{เที่} \text{ท} \text{ี} \text{làaw} (b) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{lèu} (c) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{สี} \text{ป} \text{า} \text{ห} \text{ฮ} \text{ี} \text{mem} \text{บ} \text{อ} (d) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{มา} \text{ฮ} \text{า} \text{ต} \text{พา} \text{เที่} \text{ท} \text{ี} \text{daj}. 2(a) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{พล} \text{ชี} \text{เข} \text{จ} \text{uu} \text{naj} \text{พา} \text{เที่} \text{ท} \text{ี} \text{làaw} (c) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{น} \text{จำ} \text{nap} \text{ท} \text{น} \text{jìpùn}. (d) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{ค} \text{ัน} \text{làaw} (c) \text{ฌ} \text{เข} \text{แสง} \text{ขุน} \text{พา} \text{เที่} \text{ท} \text{ี} (b) \text{พา} \text{ฮ} \text{า} \text{ท} \text{จ} \text{ák} \text{a}.
**CYCLE 12**

**M-1**

*kin khâw*

To have one's meal.

*khôj kin khâw*

I am having my meal.

*êtwlak*

To do work.

*lâaw êtwlak*

He works.

*āan nânsȳy*

To read (letters).

*phûakhâw āan nânsȳy*

We read.

*khiân nânsȳy*

To write (letters).

*khácàw khiân nânsȳy*

They write.

*hîan pháasâa*

To study language.

*càw hîan pháasâa*

You study language.

*sôn pháasâa*

To teach language.

*nâajkhûu sôn pháasâa*

The teacher teaches language.

*khúakin*

To cook.

*nâaŋ mâlîcan khúakin*

Malichanh cooks.

**M-2**

*hêt*

to do

*càw hêt njân?*

What are you doing?

*sûy*

to buy

*càw sûy njân?*

What are you buying?
bën
to look at
càw bën njàŋ? What are you looking at?

hën
to see
càw hën njàŋ? What do you see?

sɔɔkhǎa
to look for
càw sɔɔkhǎa njàŋ? What are you looking for?

pɛɛŋ
to fix, repair
càw pɛɛŋ njàŋ? What are you fixing?

C-1

A. càw hĕt njàŋ? What are you doing?
B. khâj hētwılak. I am working.

NOTES

1) kin 'to eat', hĕt 'to do, work', and āan 'to read' are action verbs that require NP complements.

NP + V + NP

khâj  kin  khâw
(I eat rice)
'I'm having a meal.'
The NP complement can be replaced by njăn in questions:

Question: càw hían njăn 'What are you studying?'
Answer: khøj hían pháasăa láaw 'Laotian.'

2) bën means 'to look at (something or someone)'. hën means 'to see, perceive'.

3) Both sòok and hăa separately mean 'to look for something'; sòokhăa has the same meaning. Combinations of two verbs with the same or similar meaning are very common in Lao.

4) khúakın is the usual verb compound for 'the cooking of food'.

5) In VP hêt wlak, wlak means 'work (in general)' and hêt means 'to do, make'. hêt wlak means 'to have a job' or 'to be working on something'.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw hêt wlak, wlak is (a) subject (b) VP (c) NP (d) complement to verb hêt.

2. A possible answer to the question càw hêt njăn is (a) bọọ mën (b) bọọ hêt (c) khøj kin khâw (d) bọọ njăn.

3. A possible answer to the question láaw hían njăn would be (a) pháasăa láaw (b) bọọ hían (c) láaw hían pháasăa ankít (d) bọọ pen njăn.

4. In the sentence náajkhúu sŏon pháasăa, sŏon is (a) MV (b) Subject (c) NP complement (d) classifier.

5. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw ēān... (b) khøj paj hêt... (c) khácàw kin... (d) càw hían...

Answers: 1c and d, 2c, 3a and c, 4a, 5a nábhsy (b)wlak (c)khâw (d)phaasăa (láaw, etc.)
6. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) càw bênh
khán hôm bôo (b) càw sookhâa njân (c) laaw sí peèn hyan laaw
(d) khoj hên thâhân phûu nân (e) phuak haw syy múak jûu
tâlâat.

CYCLE 13

M-1

kin

hâw si kîn jûu sàj?

jûu nî bôo?

Where are we going to eat?
Here?

eat

nân

hâw si nân jûu sàj?

jûu nî bôo?

Where are you going to sit?
Here?

sit

lômkan

hâw si lômkan jûu sàj?

jûu nî bôo?

Where are we going to chat?
Here?

chat

thâajhûup

hâw si paj thâajhûup jûu sàj?

jûu nî bôo?

Were are we going to take pictures?
Here?

take pictures

lîî

hâw si paj lîî jûu sàj?

jûu nî bôo?

Where are we going to hide?
Here?

hide

Answer: 6(a) Are you looking at the umbrella? (b) What are you looking for? (c) He will repair his house. (d) I see that soldier. (e) We bought a hat at the market.
M-2

kin  eat
  bọọ, paj kin jūu hân thọ?  No. Let's go eat there.

jyyn  stand
  bọọ, paj jyyn jūu hân thọ?  No. Let's go stand there.

thāa  wait
  bọọ, paj thāa jūu hân thọ?  No. Let's go wait there.

sūup jaa  smoke
  bọọ, paj sūup jaa jūu hân thọ?  No. Let's go smoke there.

sáwmāaj  rest
  bọọ, paj sáwmāaj jūu hân thọ?  No. Let's go rest there.

C-1

A. càw si sáwmāaj jūu sāj?  A. Where are you going to rest?
    jūu nli bōo?  Here?

B. bọọ, khọ j si paj sáwmāaj  B. No. I'm going to rest
    jūu hān there.

C-2

A. háw si thāa láaw jūu sāj?  A. Where are we going to
    jūu nli bōo? wait for him?
    Here?

B. bọọ, paj thāa láaw jūu  B. No. Let's go wait for
    hān thọ?  him there.

---

คำอื่นๆใช้บ่อยที่พบบุญสรรและระบายดีขาน แต่ไม่ได้ยืดหยุ่นสรรพสีณหมาย.
NOTES

1) After jūu or Verbs of Motion (paj, màa, etc.) nì means 'here'; hân 'there'.

2) The particle thō occurs at the end of sentences which 'urge' or 'suggest' a particular course of action.

APPLICATION

1. Complete these sentences: (a) láaw bōo jūu hân. láaw jūu... (b) jūu nìi bōo? bōo jūu... (c) jūu...? jūu nìi bōo?

2. Change the following statements into suggestions for action: (a) paj jyun jūu hân... (b) paj kin khâw... (c) paj thâaj hìuup...

3. Complete the following sentences (Using the English cue word): (a) paj... jūu sāj (hide) (b) hâw si lómkan jūu... (where?) (c) paj sàwmyaj jūu... thō (there). (d) bōo paj... jūu hân thō (wait) (e) ...nìi bōo? (here?) (f) nân jūu hân... (Let's...)

Answers: 1a nìi, 2b hân 1c sāj 2a thō 2b thō 2c thō 3a lìi, 3b sāj 3c hân 3d thâa 3e jūu 3f thō
CYCLE 14

M-l

phāk
to stay
lāaw phāk jūu sāj? Where is he staying?

hētkān
to work
lāaw hētkān jūu sāj? Where is he working?

tātphōm
to have one's hair cut
lāaw tātphōm jūu sāj? Where did he have his hair cut?

thōorāsāp
to make a phone call
lāaw thōorāsāp jūu sāj? Where did he make the phone call?

sōṅ thōorālēek
to send a cable
lāaw sōṅ thōorālēek jūu sāj? Where did he send the cable?

līn
to play
lāaw līn jūu sāj? Where is he playing?

fāṅ wīthānju'
to listen to the radio
lāaw fāṅ wīthānju'? jūu sāj? Where did he listen to the radio?
M-2

hýan khôj
láaw phâk jûu hýan khôj
My house.

hàantátphôm
láaw tátphôm jûu hàan
He is staying in my house.
tátphôm
He is staying in the barber shop.

dên bàn
láaw lîn jûu dên bàn
The barber shop.

hôn pásûm
láaw fân jûu hôn pásûm
He has his hair cut at the The barber shop.
hôn pásûm
barbershop.

hôonsâaj
láaw sôn thôorâleek jûu
He listened to it in the The meeting room.
hôonsâaj
meeting room.

tûuthôorâsâp sãathâarânâŋ
láaw thôorâsâp jûu tûu
He made a phone call at The public phone booth.
thôorâsâp sãathâarânâŋ
the public phone booth.

C-1

(phâk)
to stay
A. láaw phâk jûu sâj?
Where is he staying?

(hôônhêsm)
hotel
B. láaw phâk jûu hôônhêsm
He is staying at a hotel.
C-2

(phyan cāw)

A. phyan cāw jūu sāj? Where is your friend?

(hoonghēem)

B. láaw jūu hoonghēem He is at a hotel.

(phāk)

A. láaw phāk jūu hoonghēem bōo? Is he staying at the hotel?

(meem lèew)

B. meem lèew, láaw phāk jūu hoonghēem Yes, he is staying at the hotel.

NOTES

1) The Verb Phrase jūu + Locative is frequently combined with sentences to indicate location of some activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>jūu + LOC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>láaw phāk</td>
<td>jūu hýan khāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'He is staying</td>
<td>at my house.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láaw fān withānjū?</td>
<td>jūu hōoŋ pāsūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'He listened to the radio in the meeting room.'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

sāj can replace the Locative in this construction in questions:

lāaw phāk jūu sāj ? 'Where is he staying?'

lāaw fān withānjū? jūu sāj ? 'Where did he listen to the radio?'
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw phāk jūu hỳan khɔ̌j, jūu hỳan khɔ̌j is (a) Vb (b) NP (c) VP (d) N

2. In the above sentence, jūu is (a) NP (b) preposition (c) verb (d) locative (e) none of these.

3. In the above sentence, jūu hỳan khɔ̌j indicates (a) subject (b) location (c) negative (d) none of these.

4. Complete the following sentences: (a)...jūu hàan tát phôm (b) làaw lìn...dën bànn (c) làaw sòn thöorɔ̀léek jūu... (d) làaw...wǐtānjù?jūu sāj (e) làaw...jūu hɔònhɛm (g) khɔ̌j sì...jūu tuu...sàathaarâna?

5. Answer the following questions: (a) làaw lìn jūu sāj,... (b) làaw fān wǐtānjù?jūu sāj? (c) cāw hỳan phāasāa làaw jūu sāj? (d) làaw tát phôm jūu sāj? (e) làaw thöorāsāp jūu sāj?

Answers: 1c, 2c, 3b, 4(a)(lāaw) tátphóm (b) jūu (c) hōon sāj (d) fān (e) phāk (f) hōon hỳa (sɔ̌n) phāasāa (g) thöorāsāp...thöorāsāp...JOTE: In some cases other answers may also be correct. If you are not sure, ask your instructor.) Possible answers: 5(a) (lāaw lìn) jūu dēn bànn, etc.) (b) jūu hōon hɛm (hỳa lāaw, etc.) (c) jūu hōon hỳa (sɔ̌n) phāasāa (lāaw) (d) jūu hàan tátphóm (e) jūu tuu thöorāsāp sāathaarâna?
CYCLE 15

M-1

paj kinkhâw
lâaw si paj kinkhâw jûû
hàan aahâan
to go to eat
He is going to eat at the restaurant.

màa hêtkaan
lâaw si màa hêtkaan jûû
hòönkaan nî
to come to work
He is coming to work in this office building.

màa pâsûm
lâaw si màa pâsûm jûû
hòön pâsûm
to come to attend the meeting
He is coming to attend a meeting in the conference room.

paj thóorâsáp
lâaw si paj thóorâsáp jûû
hòönkaan lâaw
to make a phone call
He is going to make a phone call in his office.

màa sòokhâa
lâaw màa sòokhâa càw jûû
hòön hîân
come to look for
He came to look for you at school.

paj bên
lâaw paj bên khàajthâhâan
jûû rît khàlîfrîònîa
go to look at
He went to see the military post in the State of California.
M-2

njān

lāaw si paj hēt njān jūn hàan tátphôm?

What is he going to do at the barbershop?

sāj

lāaw si paj sōn thóorālēek jūn sāj?

Where is he going to send the cable?

njān, sāj

lāaw si paj hēt njān jūn sāj?

What is he going to do what?

njān

lāaw si máa hēt njān jūn nī?

What is he coming to do here?

njān

lāaw si paj hēt njān jūn hān?

What is he going to do there?

C-1

A. cāw si paj hēt njān jūn hàan tátphôm?

What are you going to do at the barbershop?

B. khēj si paj tátphôm

I am going to have my hair cut.
C-2

A. càw si paj sǎj? Where are you going?
B. khếj si paj hàan aahǎan I am going to the restaurant.
A. càw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūn hǎn? What are you going to do there?
B. khếj si paj kinkhǎw I am going to eat.

NOTES

1) pāj 'to go' and māa 'to come' may be followed by a VP indicating an activity (kīn khǎw, etc.). This may be followed by jūu + Loc indicating the location.

\[ \text{NP} + \text{ si pāj} + \text{ Activity} + \text{ Location} \]

\[ \text{lǎaw si pāj kīn khǎw jūu hàan aahǎan} \]

'He is going to eat at the restaurant.'

This sentence is made up of 3 basic underlying sentences:
(1) lǎaw si pāj ........
(2) (lǎaw) kīn khǎw
(3) (lǎaw) jūu hàan aahǎan

In questions the VP indicating Activity can be replaced by hēt njǎŋ 'do what?'; the VP of Location by jūu sǎj.

Statement: lǎaw si pāj kīn khǎw jūu hàan aahǎan?

Question (Activity): lǎaw si pāj hēt njǎŋ (jūu hàan aahǎan)?

Question (Location): lǎaw si pāj kīn khǎw jūu sǎj?
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj sòokhâa pỳm láaw jùu hõoṃmõo, sòokhâa pỳm is a VP indicating (a) location (b) time (c) activity (d) actor (e) none of these.

  jùu hõoṃmõo is a VP indicating (a) purpose (b) location (c) subject (d) time.

  si paj indicates (a) past time (b) future time (c) present time (d) indefinite time.

2. In the sentence láaw máa sòokhâa càw jùu hõoṃhìan the time of the action is probably (a) present (b) future (c) past (d) future or present.

3. What are the 3 underlying sentences of the following sentence:
   láaw si paj sôn thóorâléek jùu hõoṃsâaj

(a) ___________________________________________________________

(b) ___________________________________________________________

(c) ___________________________________________________________

4. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) láaw si si paj sòokhâa pỳm càw (b) khít paj bënh Withânjuo jùu haañ aahâañ (c) láaw si bêt paj hêt wìak jùu myâñ saingoon (d) láaw máa hêt njàñ jùu hõoñ pasum (e) càw si paj syý sùañno jùu sàj (f) phâj máa lín jùu dêñ baan caw (g) phýan khít si paj sôn thóorâléek jùu hõoṃsâaj.

   Answers: 1c, b and b, 2c, 3(a) láaw si paj... (b) láaw) sôn thóorâléek (c) láaw) jùu hõoṃsâaj 4(a) He is going to look for your book. (b) I went to look at the radio at the restaurant. (c) He will not go work in Saigon. (d) What did he come to do at the meeting? (e) Where will you buy a raincoat? (f) Who came to play in your yard? (g) My friend will go send a telegram at the Post Office.
CYCLE 16

M-1

mâa nîì
lãaw si mâa nîì  Come here.

paj hân
lãaw si paj hân  He is coming here.

mâa phiì
lãaw si mâa phiì  Go there.

He is going there.

mâa phiì
lãaw si mâa phiì  He is coming over here.

paj phùn
lãaw si paj phùn  Go over there.

He is going over there.

C-1

A. lãaw si mâa nîì boo?  Is he coming here?
B. boo, lãaw si paj hân  No. He is going there.

C-2

A. càw si paj phùn boo?  Are you going over there?
B. boo, khôj si mâa phiì  No. I'm coming over there.
NOTES

1) Both n†† and phi refer to space near at hand, but n†† is more specific ('right here') and phi is more general ('over here'). n†† is more likely to be used in commands, such as maa n†† 'come here.'

2) hän means 'there'. phun means 'way over there.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw si maa... (or) ... (b) láaw si paj... (or) ...

2. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) Come here. (Command). (b) Go over there. (c) Go way over there. (d) Come over here.

3. (a) What would you say if you wanted to indicate that something was in the same room with you but was about 8 feet away?

   (b) What would you say if you wanted someone to come over in your general area but not right close to you?

   (c) If you were asked where someone was, what would you say to indicate that he was a considerable distance away but still visible?

   (d) If you were asked where someone was, how would you indicate that he wasn't near you?

Answers: 1(a) n†† or phi (b) hän or phun 2(a) maa n†† (b) paj hän (c) paj phun (d) maa phi 3(a) jūū hän (b) maa phi (c) jūū phun (d) láaw bɔɔ jūū n††
CYCLE 17

M-1

sáthǎanthùut améelIkan

càw hùu tháañ paj sáthǎan
thùut améelIkan bòo?

American Embassy

Do you know the way to the American Embassy?

hýan lâaw

càw hùu tháañ paj hýan
lâaw bòo?

his house

Do you know the way to his house?

hóon síinée nlí

càw hùu tháañ paj hóon
síinée nlí bòo?

this movie house

Do you know the way to this movie house?

hàan tátpôm

càw hùu tháañ paj hàan
tátpôm bòo?

barbershop

Do you know the way to the barbershop?

komkhóosánáakaan lâaw

càw hùu tháañ paj kom
khóosánáakaan lâaw bòo?

Lao information service

Do you know the way to the Lao information service?

M-2

lìaw sàaj

hùu, lìaw sàaj jūu thánññ
nàa.

turn left

Yes (I know), turn left on the next street.

lìaw khǔa

hùu, lìaw khǔa jūu thánññ
nàa

turn right

Yes, turn right on the next street.
paj sỳy sỳy
hùu, paj sỳy sỳy taam thánôn nìi

llaaw khūa lèsw paj sỳy sỳy
hùu, llaaw khūa jùu thánôn làan sàaj lèsw paj sỳy sỳy

go straight ahead
Yes, go straight ahead on this street.

turn right then go straight
Yes, turn right on Lane Xang Street then go straight.

bōō
go
no

bōō, khūj bōō hùu
No, I don't know.

C-1
(hàan tátphōm)

A. càw hùu tháaŋ paj hàan tátphōm bōō?
Do you know the way to the barbershop?

(sàaj, thánôn nāa)

B. hùu, llaaw sàaj jùu thánôn nāa
Yes, turn left on the next street.

คำสอนว่าจะให้การแจ้งว่า "ติ๊" แปลว่า "สวัสดี" แต่ "อย่า" แปลเป็น "อย่า" ในภาษาลาว ไม่เพียงแต่การส่งสัญญาณ "อย่า" แต่ยังมีการส่งสัญญาณ "อย่ายิ่ง" ซึ่งถ้าเราระบุว่า อย่าจะส่งสัญญาณ "อย่า" ตามลำดับ จะส่งสัญญาณ "อย่า" อย่างสม่ำเสมอ.

63
NOTES

1) The noun thān 'way, direction' can be followed by Verb Phrase 'modifiers', such as paj hýn lâaw 'go to his house' indicating 'destination'. The whole construction thān + VP is a Noun Phrase and may serve as the NP complement of a verb, such as hùu 'to know'.

\[
\text{NP} + \text{MV} + \text{NP}
\]

\[
\text{khūj} \quad \text{hùu} \quad \text{thān} \quad \text{paj} \quad \text{hóon} \quad \text{sînèé}
\]

(I know way go building cinema)

'I know the way to the movies.'

2) Where English uses Verb+Adverbials or Preposition+Noun Phrase to indicate directions and locations, Lao normally has Verb+Verb or Verb+VP, as in the following examples:

(1) English: Verb + Adverbial

   Turn left/right.

Lao: Verb + Verb

\[
\text{lìaw} \quad \text{sàaj/khūa}
\]

(2) English: Verb + Adverbial + Preposition-NP

   Go straight ahead on this street.

Lao: Verb + Verb + Verb Phrase

\[
\text{paj} \quad \text{sùy} \quad \text{sùy} \quad \text{taam} \quad \text{thánño} \quad \text{nìi}
\]

3) The affirmative response to bòo type (Yes-No) questions is repetition of the Verb; the negative response is bòo, bòo + Verb.

\[
\text{NP} + \text{MV} + \text{Complement + Question}
\]

\[
\text{càw} \quad \text{hùu} \quad \text{thān} \quad \text{paj} \quad \text{tálāat} \quad \text{bòo}
\]

'Do you know the way to the market?'

64
Affirmative
Response:  hùu, (lìaw sàaj jùu thánôn nâa)
'Yes, I do. (Turn left at the next block.!)'

Negative
Response:  bōō, (khôj) bōō hùu
'No, I don't.'

The negative is normally followed by another sentence supplying additional information.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence lìaw hùu thánôn pàj hýan càw, pàj hýan càw is (a) the predicate (b) VP (c) 'modifier' of thánôn (d) NP (e) verb.

2. In the above sentence thánôn pàj hýan càw is (a) NP (b) VP (c) predicate (d) complement of the verb hùu (e) subject of the sentence.

3. In the sentence lìaw sàaj (a) both lìaw and sàaj are verbs (b) sàaj is an adjective (c) neither is a verb (d) only lìaw is a verb.

4. In the sentence pàj syy syy taam thánôn nìi, tam is (a) a preposition (b) NP (c) verb (d) VP (e) particle (f) it means 'to follow or go along'.

5. Complete the following sentences: (a) lìaw... jùu thánôn nâa (b) ...syy syy (c) bōō, khôj... hùu (d) ...khúa jùu thánôn laan sàaj (e) caw hùu thánôn... hýan lìaw bōō (f) hùu, pàj ... ... taam... nìi.

Answers:  1b and c, 2a and d, 3a, 4c and f, 5(a)sàaj/khúa (b)pàj (c)bōō (d)lìaw (e)pàj (f)syy syy... thánôn
CYCLE 18

M-1

**phoon njín phuu nīi**

càw hùucák phuū njín phuū nīi bōo?

**phoon sāaj phuū nīi**

càw hùucák phuū sāaj phuū nīi bōo?

**déknōcj phuū nīi**

càw hùucák déknōcj phuū nīi bōo?

**nōn sāaj khēj**

càw hùucák nōn sāaj khēj bōo?

**nōn sāaw khēj**

càw hùucák nōn sāaw khēj bōo?

**àaj khēj**

càw hùucák àaj khēj bōo?

**phoon mēe láaw**

càw hùucák phuū mēe láaw bōo?

this woman

Do you know this woman?

this man

Do you know this man?

this child

Do you know this child?

my younger brother

Do you know my younger brother?

my younger sister

Do you know my younger sister?

my older brother

Do you know my older brother?

his parents

Do you know his parents?


vàj khêj

càw hùucák vàj khêj boɔ?

my older sister
Do you know my older sister?

lùuk khêj

càw hùucák lùuk khêj boɔ?

my child
Do you know my child?

M-2

hóonkaan càw

hùu, khêj dàj hùucák káp
láaw jùu hóonkaan càw

your office
Yes, I met him at your office.

wat inpseŋ

hùu, khêj dàj hùucák káp
láaw jùu wat inpseŋ

Inpeng temple
Yes, I met her at the Wat
Inpeng.

sámóosɔɔɔɔn

hùu, khêj dàj hùucák káp
láaw jùu sámóosɔɔɔɔn

club
Yes, I met him at the club.

náj rɔtfaj

hùu, khêj dàj hùucák káp
láaw jùu náj rɔtfaj

on the train
Yes, I met him on the train.

náj náan kiniŋŋaŋ

hùu, khêj dàj hùucák káp
láaw jùu náj náan kiniŋŋaŋ

at the party
Yes, I met her at the party.
M-3

phŭa

khŏj sî dāj hùucāk kāp phŭa láaw

I'll get to meet her husband.

mīa

khŏj sî dāj hùucāk kāp mīa láaw

I'll get to meet his wife.

phŏō thāw

khŏj sî dāj hùucāk kāp phŏō thāw láaw

I'll get to meet his father-in-law.

mēē thāw

khŏj sî dāj hùucāk kāp mēē thāw láaw

I'll get to meet his mother-in-law.

phŏō pūū

khŏj sî dāj hùucāk kāp phŏō pūū láaw

I'll get to meet her father-in-law.

mēē njāa

khŏj sî dāj hùucāk kāp mēē njāa láaw

I'll get to meet her mother-in-law.
C-1

(ᕷ nếj çevirë)

A. càw hùcák chúi nếj
    phœu nli boø?

(wæt inpeñ)

B. hùu, khøj dàj hùcák
    káp láaw jùu wæt inpeñ

woman

Do you know this woman?

Inpeng temple

Yes, I met her at the
Inpeng temple.

C-2

(làaw)

A. càw dàj hùcák káp
    láaw jùu sàj?

(hóonnìan)

B. khøj dàj hùcák káp
    láaw jùu hóonnìan

she

Where did you meet her?

school

I met her at school.

C-3

A. càw hùcák mià láaw boø?

B. boø, khøj boø hùcák láaw

Do you know his wife?

No, I don't know her.

A. càw si dàj hùcák káp láaw boø?

B. mën lëw, khøj si dàj hùcák
    káp láaw
    khácàw si maa hýan khøj

Will you get to meet her?

Yes, I'll get to meet her.

They will come to my house.
NOTES

1) hùucák means 'to be acquainted or familiar with (someone or something)'.

khêj hùucák lâaw 'I know her.'
càw hùucák mýan wîancan boo? 'Are you familiar with Vientiane?'

2) dàj + Main Verb means 'to have the opportunity (to do something as in these examples:

khêj dàj hùucák kâp lâaw (I had the opportunity to become acquainted with him. 'I got to meet him.'

khêj si dàj hùucák kâp lâaw 'I will get to meet her.'

3) náan kinlîan is a Noun Compound meaning 'a party' and is made up of náan 'celebration' + kin 'to eat' + lîan 'to treat s.o.'

4) In Lao when referring to the male and female offspring in a family one must indicate not only their sex but also their relative ages. Consider this hypothetical family of 5 children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rank</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

 Child number 3 refers to

1 as àaj (khêj) 'older brother'.
2 as ýaj (khêj) 'older sister'.
4 as nòonsâaw (khêj) 'younger sister'.
5 as nòonsâaj (khêj) 'younger brother'.

70
5) When referring to in-laws, one must indicate whether they are the husband's or the wife's.

phâā phu (1) meē njâam (2) phâā thâaw (3) meē thâaw (4)

phûa
'husband'
mîa
'wife'

(1) her father-in-law
(2) her mother-in-law
(3) his father-in-law
(4) his mother-in-law

APPLICATION

1. If you heard someone say khôj dâj hûucâk kâp láaw, you would assume that the speaker (a) knew the person he was talking about, (b) did not know that person, (c) had met that person, (d) had not met that person.

2. If you heard someone say khôj hûucâk mûan wîancan, (a) you would know that he had been to Vientiane. (b) You would know that he knew at least where Vientiane is located.

3. If a person says vaj khôj, you know the person he is talking about is (a) older than he, (b) younger than he, (c) male, (d) female, (d) you can not tell whether the person is younger or older, male or female.

4. If a person says âaj khôj, you know the person he is talking about is (a) female, (b) male (c) younger than the speaker (d) older than the speaker (e) sex and age are unclear.

5. Is the situation described in the following statement possible? lâaw pen nîon sâaw khôj lê? khôj pen nîon sâaj lâaw

6. In the situation described in the following statement possible? khôj pen vaj cîaw lê? cîaw pen nîon sâaj khôj.

Answers: 1a and c, 2b, 3a and d, 4b and d, 5no, 6yes
7. Fill in the blanks with déknòɔŋ or lùuk as appropriate: càw hën ______ phùu nan bọo? lāaw pen ______ sǎaw khæj (1)

8. If a person said to someone phɔɔ pùu càw pen phyan khæj would he be talking to (a) a man (b) a woman (c) either (d) neither

9. If someone said khæj dāj hùucák káp mëê thàw càw, you would know she was talking to a man. True or false?

10. Could this be a true statement? mëê njàa càw pen mëê khæj

11. Could this be true? phɔɔ thàw khæj pen phɔɔ pùu càw

---

CYCLE 19

M-1

phaak kān

khæj màa câak phaak kān Central part

phaak tàj

khæj màa câak phaak tàj I am from the Southern part.

phaak nāa

khæj màa câak phaak nāa I am from the Northern part.

phaak tāwèn ɔok

khæj màa câak phaak tāwèn I am from the Eastern part.

ɔok

phaak tāwèn tōk Western part

khæj màa câak phaak tāwèn tōk I am from the Western part.

---

Answers: 7(1) déknòɔŋ (2) lùuk, 8b, 9true, 10yes, 11no
M-2

phàak kaaŋ
m'yàŋ khät jùu tháaŋ phàak
tāwèn tāwèn khősøŋ páthèet láaw

Central part
My hometown is in the Central part of Laos.

Southeastern part
My hometown is in the Southeastern part of Laos.

Northeastern part
My hometown is in the Northeastern part of Laos.

Northwestern part
My hometown is in the Northwestern part of Laos.

Southwestern part
My hometown is in the Southwestern part of Laos.
C-1

A. náaj khúu máa câak phàak daj khơọŋ páthète lāaw?  What part of Laos is the teacher from?

B. lāaw máa câak phàak... He is from the... part.

C-2

(phàak tāwen ʔoksǐːngtāj) Southeastern

A. phỳan cāw máa câak phàak tāwen ʔoksǐːngtāj khơọŋ páthète lāaw, mĕen bōo? Your friend is from the Southeastern part of Laos, isn't he?

(phàak tāwen tōksǐːngtāj) Southwestern

B. bōo mĕen, lāaw máa câak phàak tāwen tōksǐːngtāj khơọŋ páthète lāaw No, he is from the Southwestern part of Laos.

C-3

A. cāw sỳŋ njǎŋ? What's your name?

B. khǭŋ sỳŋ súksǐːmbuun My name is Souksomboun.

A. cāw pen khōn lāaw mĕen bōo? You are a Laotian, aren't you?

B. mĕen lēeū, khǭŋ pen khōn lāaw Yes, I am a Laotian.

74
A. càw màa câak sǎj? Where are you from?
B. khổj màa câak mỳān wìǎncan I am from the city of Vientiane.

A. mỳān wìǎncan jùu sǎj? Where is Vientiane?
B. mỳān wìǎncan jùu nàj Vientiane is in Laos? páthèe làaw

A. mỳān wìǎncan jùu nàj phàak In what part of Laos is Vientiane?
daj khọc páthèe làaw?
B. mỳān wìǎncan jùu nàj phàak Vientiane is in the Central kaan khọc páthèe làaw part of Laos.

NOTES

1) Except for tàj 'South' and nỳa 'North' all compass points are compounds:
táwèngdok 'East': táwèng 'sun' + dòk 'to come up'
táwèngtòk 'West': táwèng 'sun' + tòk 'to fall'
Compounds such as Southeast are made with sìañ 'direction':
táwèngtòk sìañỳa 'Northwest': táwèngtòk 'West' + sìañ 'direction' + nỳa 'North'
táwèngdòksìañtàj 'Southeast': táwèngdòk 'East' + sìañ 'direction' + tàj 'South'. táwèngdòksìañtàj 'Southwest' and táwèngdòksìañỳa 'Northeast' are formed in a similar fashion.

2) In longer Noun Phrases khọc 'of' must be used so that the relationship between the parts of the NP are clear, as in: phàak táwèngdòksìañtàj khọc páthèe làaw 'The Southeastern part of Laos.'
LABEL THE SECTIONS OF LAOS ON THIS MAP IN LAOTIAN.
CYCLE 20

M-1

wáanst wašt

càw si wáanst wašt săj?
wašt phìt boô?

put

Where are you going to put (it)? Over here?

thée løŋ

càw si thée løŋ săj?
løŋ phìt boô?

pour out

Where are you going to pour (it) out? Over here?

tàn wašt

càw si tàn wašt săj?
wàšt phìt boô?

set up

Where are you going to set (it) up? Over here?

njín săj

càw si njín săj săj?
sâj phìt boô?

shoot at

Where are you shooting at? Over here?

lēen âok

càw si lēen âok săj?
âok phìt boô?

run out

What exit are you going to run out through? (The one) here?

M-2

wáanst wašt

khôi si aw paj wáanst wašt phùn

put down

I'm going to take it over there and put it down.

pâo wašt

khôi si aw paj pâo wašt phùn

leave

I'm going to take it over there and leave it.

77
tít sњ
khдеж si aw paj tít sњ ph旬
I'm going to take it over there and stick it up.

 sóc
khдеж si aw paj sóc ph旬
I'm going to take it out that exit over there.

thím l旬
khдеж si aw paj thím l旬 ph旬
I'm going to take it over there and drop it.

C-1
A. càw si wάŋ pъm hљa nлi wάj sњj? wάj phлi boo?
Where are you going to put this book? Over here?

B. b printk, khдеж si aw pъm hљa nлi paj wάŋ wάj ph旬
No. I'm going to take this book and put it over there.

C-2
A. càw si aw pъm hљa nлi paj pάwάj ph旬 boo?
Are you going to take this book and leave it over there?

B. b printk, khдеж si pάwά pъm hљa nлi wάj nлi
No. I'm going to leave this book here.
NOTES

1) In Lao Verb Compounds are used in situations where Verb + Preposition or Verb + Adverb would be used in English: afb əñ wāj 'to put something in a place and leave it there'; wañ wāj 'to put, place' + wāj 'to leave for future use'; thēe lōn 'to pour, dump something out'; thēe 'to pour, dump' + lōn 'to go down'; tān wāj 'to set something up and leave it there'; tān wāj 'to put something in a standing position' + wāj 'Leave for future use' nīn sāj 'to shoot towards'; nīn 'to shoot a firearm; etc.' + sāj 'to put in'; làn sōk 'to escape out through'; làn 'to run' + sōk 'to go out'.

2) If we analyze an English verb like 'bring', we will see that at least two things are involved: (1) taking hold of something and (2) moving it from one place to another in the direction of the speaker. In Lao both of these actions are reflected in the verb combination aw... maa (aw 'to take hold of' + maa 'to go towards the speaker'). aw... paj is used to indicate that the action is away from the speaker.

(a) Any object that is to be carried occurs after aw, thus aw pūm paj 'take the book away', etc.

(b) A series of other verbs may occur after aw... paj, etc. aw paj wāñ wāj phun 'to take (it) over there and leave it'.

3) thīm lōn means literally 'to throw down' but corresponds to English 'drop'.

4) pāp means 'to leave something', thus pāp máa 'to divorce your wife'; pāp wāj 'to leave something temporarily.'
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence \textit{kʰàːj si aw paj wàːn wàj phùn, aw paj wàːn wàj} is (a) a series of Nouns, (b) Verb + Preposition (c) a series of verbs (d) none of these.

2. True or false? \textit{aw} means 'to bring'.

3. \textit{wàj} in the Verb Compound \textit{wáːn wàj} indicates that (a) the speaker has no further use for something, (b) He has further use for it, (c) There is no reference to further use.

4. Match these Lao sentences with the English sentences:

   (a) \textit{aw sǒːdam láaw paj wàj phùn} (a) He didn't drop his umbrella.

   (b) \textit{láaw si aw mūak paj pāʔ wàj sǎj} (b) Is the policeman aiming his gun over there?

   (c) \textit{láaw bōo dāj thīm khán hōm láaw lōŋ} (c) Put his pencil over there.

   (d) \textit{tamlūat si njīn sǎj phùn bōo} (d) Where is he going to leave his hat?

Answers: 1c, 2false, 3b, 4a and c, b and d, c and a, d and b.
CYCLE 21

M-1

náj káp
jùu sǎj? jùu náj káp nìi nìi boo?
in the box
Where? In this box here?

thèn lăn túu
jùu sǎj? jùu thèn lăn túu nìi nìi boo?
on top of the cabinet
Where? On top of this cabinet here?

náj lınŏk
jùu sǎj? jùu náj lınŏk nìi nìi boo?
in the drawer
Where? In this drawer here?

náj kăpcoon
jùu sǎj? jùu náj kăpcoon nìi nìi boo?
in the can
Where? In this can here?

khān màănăn
jùu sǎj? jùu khān màănăn nìi nìi boo?
beside the bench
Where? Beside this bench here?

M-2

thŏng
jùu náj thŏng nàn hân
bag
In that bag there.

hōo
jùu náj hōo nàn hân
package
In that package there.

81
kèsw, nûaj  
juû náj kèsw nûaj nànn hán  
bottle, classifier  
In that bottle there.

cîk, nûaj  
juû náj cîk nûaj nànn hán  
glass, classifier  
In that glass there.

kàtša, nûaj  
juû náj kàtša nûaj nànn hán  
basket, classifier  
In that basket there.

C-1

A. juû sàj? juû náj kâp  
nîi nîi bôo?  
Where? In this box here?
B. bôo, juû náj kâp nànn hán  
No. In that box there.

C-2

A. juû sàj? juû náj kèsw  
nànn hán bôo?  
Where? In that bottle there?
B. bôo, juû náj kèsw nîi nîi  
No. In this bottle here.

(Translation: In order to answer the question, the student should check the box or bottle located in the room. This exercise will help students practice their ability to express directions in everyday situations.)
NOTES

1) As can be seen in this grammatical exposition, n̂îi may function both as a **Determiner** and as an **Adverb of Place**:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{S} \\
\text{(NP)} \\
\text{VP} \\
\text{V} \\
\text{Loc} \\
\text{Prep.} \\
\text{NP} \\
\text{Loc} \\
\text{Adv.} \\
\text{Loc} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{jǔu} & \quad \text{náj} & \quad \text{kǎp} & \quad \text{n̂îi} & \quad \text{n̂îi} \\
\end{align*}
\]

([It] is in box this here.)

'Its in this box here.'

A complete list of words functioning like n̂îi is given here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Determiner</th>
<th>Adverb of Place</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n̂îi 'this'</td>
<td>n̂îi 'here'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phiì 'around here'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n̂àn 'that'</td>
<td>hân 'there'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phùn 'way over there'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPLICATION

1. In the sentence จูน น้ำจ ทะเล น้ำ หนัก, หนัก is (a) NP (b) preposition (c) determiner (d) adverb.

2. In the sentence above น้ำ is (a) NP (b) determiner (c) adverb (d) none of these.

3. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:

(a) จูน น้ำจ กระเป๋า น้ำจ น้ำจ 'In that basket there.'
(b) จูน น้ำจ  오히 น้ำจ น้ำจ 'On top of this cabinet here?'
(c) จูน น้ำจ สะพาย น้ำจ น้ำจ 'Beside that bench way over there?'
(d) จูน น้ำจ อยู่ 'Where?'
(e) จูน น้ำจ 'Way over there.'
(f) จูน น้ำจ 'Near here.'
(g) จูน น้ำจ ทะเล 'In that bag.'
(h) จูน น้ำจ น้ำ น้ำจ 'In that bottle there.'
(i) จูน น้ำจ น้ำจ น้ำจ 'On top of this cabinet here?'

Answers: 1d, 2b, 3(a)น้ำ หนัก (b)น้ำ หนัก (c)น้ำ น้ำจ (d)น้ำ หาน (f)น้ำ น้ำจ (g)น้ำ น้ำจ (h)น้ำจ (i)ทะเล น้ำจ
CYCLE 22

M-1

kh鲐 j p猫tuu

c脢 s脢 kh酶 j p猫tuu n脡 ph脢 l boo?

open the door

Are you going to open this door over here?

 tắt p聵聳-j脙

c脢 s脢 c脢 t p聵聳-j脙 n脡 ph脢 l boo?

close the window

Are you going to close this window over here?

s脜 j k脙脭 l脛脕脜

c脢 s脢 s脨 j k脙脭 l脛脕脜 n脡 ph脢 l boo?

lock the drawer

Are you going to lock this drawer over here?

kh酶 j k脙脭 h脪脌

c脢 s脢 kh酶 j k脙脭 h脪脌 n脡 ph脢 l boo?

unlock the trunk

Are you going to unlock this trunk over here?

l脣 j kh脤脰脡

c脢 s脢 l脣 j kh脤脰脡 n脡 ph脢 l boo?

go down the stairs

Are you going down these stairs over here?

M-2

kh酶 j p猫tuu

kh酶 j s脨 kh酶 j p猫tuu n脡 p脰脧

open the door

I'm going to open that door over there.

p脨 脨脣

kh酶 j s脨 p脨 脨脣 n脡 p脰脧

change the tire

I'm going to change that tire over there.

85
paj hảa, phưu
khệj si paj hảa phưu nàn phùn
go to, (classifier)
I'm going to see that person over there.
sọjlıya, phều
dhệj si sọjlıya phều nàn phùn
help, (classifier)
I'm going to help that person over there.
tít-tọo k'àp
khệj si tít-tọo k'àp phều nàn phùn
contact, communicate with
I'm going to contact that person over there.

C-1

A. càw si át pọọn-jlàm nli phi j boo?
B. bọọ khệj si át pọọn-jlàm nàn phùn
Are you going to close this window over here?
No. I'm going to close that window over there.

C-2

A. càw si lọọ khândaj nàn phùn boò?
B. bọọ, khệj si lọọ khândaj nli phi j
Are you going to go down those stairs over there?
No. I'm going to go down these stairs over here.

สาระสำคัญตั้งแต่ต้นมามีผลที่อยู่กลางใจ ตั้งแต่บ้านไปสอนลูกมีสอนให้ด้วยตัวฉันๆมือเท่านั้นก้ยิม.
สถิตติคนย่อมจะมีที่มันอยู่ได้ ยิ่งมีด้วยอิจฉาใช้จี้. อย่าให้เห็นต้องปรับเปลี่ยนด้วยใจอย่างทุกอย่าง!
NOTES

1) phì and phùn may serve to indicate the location of the Noun Phrase they follow as in the example below:

\[ S \rightarrow NP \rightarrow Prev \rightarrow VP \rightarrow Vt \rightarrow \text{Nom(S)} \rightarrow \text{Loc} \rightarrow \text{LOC} \]

khâj  
(s1) will  
ptan change  
jaan that tire  
nan (that)  
(jum) is over  
phùn there.

'I will change that tire over there.'

In this example the reference is to a particular thing which is in a particular place. If a person didn't understand the statement above, his question would be jaan daj? 'Which tire?'

2) khâj 'to open, unlock', át 'to close', and sâj 'to put in' occur in constructions like these:

khâj pátuu, pūn-jlam, tuu, etc. 'to open the door, window, closet, etc.'

khâj kâcê pátuu, hîp, tuu, lînsák, etc. 'to unlock the door, trunk, closet, drawer, etc.'
át pátuu, pǭŋ-jłam, etc. 'to close the door, etc.'
sâj kâcse pátuu, hîip, tùu, 'to lock the door, etc.'
linšak, etc.

3) pâj hâa + Person means 'to go to see a person'.

4) tît tɔɔ kâp + Person means 'to contact someone (in person, or by telephone, or some other way).'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:

(a) câw si kâj _______ pátuu nî phî lî bôo?
   'Are you going to unlock this door over here?'

(b) khôj si pâj _______ phûn phûn nàn phûn
   'I'm going to see that friend over there.'

(c) lâaw si bɔɔ _______ tùu nî bôo?
   'Isn't he going to close this closet?'

(d) khôj si tît tɔɔ _______ phûn nàn phûn
   'I'm going to contact that person over there.'

(e) khôj si _______ lâaw
   'I'll help her.'

2. Read the Noun Phrase and answer the questions:

(a) pátuu nî phîlî. pátuu jû phûn sâj? _________

(b) jaan nàn phûn. jaan jû phûn sâj? _________

Answers: 1(a)kâcse, (b)hâa, (c)át, (d)kâp, (e)ssɔj lîya 2(a)jû phîlî (b)jû phûn
3. (c) phuu nang phun. phuu nang jou say? __________
   (d) phan jlam nil phi. phan jlam jou say? __________

3. In the NP linsak nil phi, phi is (a) determiner (b) adverb
   (c) verb (d) none of these.

4. In the NP above, phi (a) indicates the location of linsak,
   (b) modifies nil, (c) has no grammatical relationship to
   linsak nil.

Answers: 2(c) jou phun, (d) jou phi, 3b, 4a
CYCLE 23

M-1

้าน, ป้ม, หน้า

càw si ้าน ป้ม หน้า นี่
จู่ ฝิล บ็อ?

to read, book, (classifier)

Are you going to read this book over here?

ผ่อน, ถ่อ, ข้าน.

càw si ผสอน ถ่อ ข้าน นี่
จู่ ฝิล บ็อ?

to fix, car, (classifier)

Are you going to fix this car over here?

ส่าจ, โฆษณ, แล้วลิ.

càw si ส่าจ โฆษณ แล้วลิ
จู่ ฝิล บ็อ?

to use, thing, these

Are you going to use these things over here?

สาก, ส่าย-น้ํอค, ปัญ.

càw si สาก ส่าย-น้ํอค ปัญ
นี่ จู่ ฝิล บ็อ?

to wash, jacket, (classifier)

Are you going to wash this jacket over here?

M-2

้าน, ป้ม, หน้า

khoếj si ป้ j ้าน ป้ม หน้า
นี่ จู่ ผ่ิน

to read, book, (classifier)

I'm going to read this book over there.

พิม, แป้ง

khøj si ป้ พิม แป้ง
นี่ จู่ ผ่ิน

to print, type; letter

I'm going to type this letter over there.
**sûy, clà**

khôj si pây sûy clà nî
jûu phûn

to buy, paper

I'm going to buy this paper over there.

**slîcesn, lỳan**

khôj si pây slîcesn lỳan
nî jûu phûn

to explain; matter, about

I'm going to explain this matter over there.

**M-3**

lôtdút, pstå, khán

láaw si aw lôtdút khán
nàn màa pstå jûu phi boô?
bulldozer; to repair, fix; (classifier)

Is he going to bring that bulldozer over here and fix it?

**khyançák, nûaj, pákçôp**

láaw si aw khyançák nûaj
nàn màa pákçôp jûu phi boô?
engine, motor, machine, (classifier), to assemble

Is he going to bring that engine over here and assemble it?

**môofáj, nûaj, sâak**

láaw si aw môofáj nûaj
nàn màa sâak jûu phi boô?
battery (car), (classifier), charge (electricity)

Is he going to bring that battery over here and charge it?

**thûaj, sám, lâwnàn, lâñ**

láaw si aw thûaj-sám
lâwnân màa lâñ jûu phi boô?
bowl, plate, those, wash

Is he going to bring those dishes over here and wash them?
M-4

jaŋ lōt, sēn, tāap
lāaw si aw jaŋ lōt sēn
nān paj tāap jū phùn

tākiaŋ, nūaj, tàj
lāaw si aw tākiaŋ nūaj nān
paj tàj jū phùn

phāahōm, lāwnān, cēskjaaj
lāaw si aw phāahōm lāwnān
paj cēskjaaj jū phùn

tiāŋ, nūaj, tāŋ
lāaw si aw tiāŋ nūaj nān
paj tāŋ jū phùn

C-1

A. cāw si ēan pỳm hūa nli
jū phī lī bōo?

B. bōo, khēj si ēan jū
phùn

tire (car), (classifier), patch
He is going to take that
tire over there and patch it.
lamp, (classifier), to light
He is going to take that
lamp over there and light it.
blanket, those, to distribute
He is going to take those
blankets over there and
distribute them.
bed, (classifier), to set up
He is going to take that
bed over there and set it up.

Are you going to read this
book over there?
No. I'm going to read it
over there.
C-2

A. láaw si aw lōtdūt khán nān māa pēēj jūu phī bōo?
B. bōo, láaw si aw paj pēēj jūu phùn

Is he going to bring the bulldozer over here and fix it?
No. He is going to take it over there and fix it.

C-3 (With reference to Cycles 20, 21 and 22)

Tutor: 'lāaw si šān pỳm hūa nī nī.? 

A. láaw si hēt njāŋ?
B. láaw si šān pỳm

He is going to read this book here.'
What is he going to do?
He is going to read a book.

A. láaw si šān pỳm hūa daj?
B. láaw si šān pỳm hūa nī.

Which book is he going to read?
He is going to read this book.

A. pỳm hūa nī jūu sāj?
B. pỳm hūa nī jūu nī

Where is this book?
This book is here.

A. láaw si šān pỳm jūu sāj?
B. khįįj bōo hūu

Where is he going to read the book?
I don't know.
Tutor: 'lāaw si pīan jāaŋ
sēn nān jūu phùn.'

A. lāaw si hēt njāŋ?
What is he going to do?

B. lāaw si pīan jāaŋ.
He is going to change a tire.

A. lāaw si pīan jāaŋ sēn daj?
Which tire is he going to change?

B. lāaw si pīan jāaŋ sēn nān
He is going to change that tire.

A. lāaw si pīan jūu sāŋ?
Where is he going to change it?

B. lāaw si pīan jūu phùn
He is going to change it over there.

A. jāaŋ sēn nān jūu sāŋ?
Where is that tire?

B. khēj bāọ hùu
I don't know.
NOTES

1) If instead of indicating the location of a particular object (pátuu nìi phìi), the reference is to the location of a particular activity, juu + LOC is attached to the main VP as illustrated below:

(I will change tire that (I will be) over there.

'I will change that tire (in that spot) over there.'

The emphasis here is on where the changing will take place not on the particular tire to be changed; hence, the question which would elicit this response is:

cào si pían (jaan) juu sàj  'Where will you change the tire?'

95
2) **lāw** 'group, bunch' is frequently used with Count Nouns to indicate 'plurality'.

- **khọơn lāw nǐi** 'these things'
- **phāāhōm lāw nān** 'those blankets'

3) A list of unit classifiers and the nouns they are used with is given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classifier</th>
<th>Noun Referent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hńska</td>
<td>pỳm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khàn</td>
<td>lōt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phỳyn</td>
<td>sỳa nỏok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūaj</td>
<td>khỳānçǎk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tǎkian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mōsāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēn</td>
<td>jaān (lōt)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**APPLICATION**

1. In each of the following sentences indicate whether the emphasis is on the location of the NP or the VP by writing NP or VP in the blank after the sentence:

   (a) khọj si paj sān pỳm hńska nǐi jǔu phûn  
   (b) khọj si paj hńska phûù nān phûn  
   (c) cāw si lón khàndaj nǐi phûl boɔ?  
   (d) láaw si aw thûaj-sāam lǎwnān màa làan jǔu phûl boɔ?  
   (e) cāw si sāj khọɔn lǎwnlǐ jǔu phûl boɔ?  

   **Answers:** 1(a)VP (b)NP (c)NP (d)VP (e)VP

96
2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) 锴 si 畎 pём ________ nli boo?
    'Are you going to read this book?'

(b) _sibling si paj ________ lýaŋ nli jùu phùn
    'I'm going to explain this matter over there.'

(c) aw lòtđút ________ ________ màa pœŋ jùu phèi
    'Bring that bulldozer over here and fix it.'

(d) láaw si aw phâahôm lâwnàn paj cĕkjaaj ________ ________
    'He is going to take those blankets over there and distribute them.'

(e)_sibling si sák sỳanòck ________ ________ jùu phèi
    'I'm going to wash this jacket over here.'

(f) láaw si aw jaan lôt ________ nàn paj ________ jùu phùn
    'He's going to take that tire over there and patch it.'

Answers: 2(a)hāa (b)sâicēŋ (c)khán nàn (d)jùu phùn (e)phỳyn
           nǐ (f)sĕn/tâap
CYCLE 24

M-1
sŭun
sŭun kăp nṳŋ pen nṳŋ Zero and one is one.

nṳŋ
nṳŋ kăp nṳŋ pen sŏon One and one is two.

sŏon
sŏon kăp nünü pen săam Two and one is three.

săam
săam kăp nṳŋ pen sĭi Three and one is four.

sĭi
sĭi kăp nṳŋ pen hâa Four and one is five.

hâa
hâa kăp nṳŋ pen hók Five and one is six.

hók
hók kăp nṳŋ pen cĕt Six and one is seven.

cĕt
cĕt kăp nṳŋ pen pĕst Seven and one is eight.

pĕst
pĕst kăp nṳŋ pen kàw Eight and one is nine.

kàw
kàw kăp nṳŋ pen sĭp Nine and one is ten.
M-2

\[ \text{nûn} \]

sîp kâp nûn pen sîp-\text{êt} \quad \text{Ten and one is eleven.}

\[ \text{nûn} \]

sîp-\text{êt} kâp nûn pen sîpsôon \quad \text{Eleven and one is twelve.}

\[ \text{pêêt} \]

sîpsôon kâp pêêt pen sâaw \quad \text{Twelve and eight is twenty.}

\[ \text{nûn} \]

sâaw kâp nûn pen sâaw-\text{êt} \quad \text{Twenty and one is twenty one.}

\[ \text{nûn} \]

sâaw-\text{êt} kâp nûn pen sâawsôon \quad \text{Twenty-one and one is twenty two.}

\[ \text{pêêt} \]

sâawsôon kâp pêêt pen sâamsîp \quad \text{Twenty-two and eight is thirty.}

\[ \text{nûn} \]

sâamsîp kâp nûn pen sâamsîp-\text{êt} \quad \text{Thirty and one is thirty-one.}

\[ \text{nûn} \]

sâamsîp-\text{êt} kâp nûn pen sâamsîpsôon \quad \text{Thirty-one and one is thirty two.}

\[ \text{kàw} \]

sâamsîpsôon kâp kàw pen sîisîp-\text{êt} \quad \text{Thirty-two and nine is forty one.}
hâasîp-êt

sîisîp-êt kâp hâasîp-êt
pen kâwsîpsâon

pêst

kâwsîpsâon kâp pêst pen
nên hêoêj

kàw hêoêj

nên hêoêj kâp kàw hêoêj pen
nên phân

nên

nên phân kâp nên pen nên
phân kâp nên

kàwsîpkàw

nên phân kâp nên kâp kâwsîp
kàw pen phân-êt lêy nên
phân nên hêoêj

phân-êt

phân-êt kâp phân-êt pen sêon
phân sêon

fifty one

Forty-one and fifty-one is ninety two.

eight

Ninety-two and eight is one hundred.

nine hundred

One hundred and nine hundred is one thousand.

one

One thousand and one is one thousand and one.

ninety nine

One thousand and one and ninety nine is one thousand one hundred.

one thousand one

One thousand and one and one thousand is two thousand and one.
M-3

sǹơŋ, hāa

sǹơŋ káp hāa pen thǣwdaj?

What is two and five?

two, five

sĭpstī, sāam

sĭpstī káp sāam pen thǣwdaj?

What is fourteen and three?

fourteen, three

sāawhōk, cēt

sāaw hōk káp cēt pen thǣwdaj?

What is twenty six and seven?

twenty-six, seven

sāam sĭp sǹơŋ, sǹơŋ

sām sĭp sǹơŋ káp sǹơŋ pen thǣwdaj?

What is thirty two and two?

thirty-two, two

hāa sĭp-ēt, hōk

hāa sĭp-ēt káp hōk pen thǣwdaj?

What is fifty one and six?

fifty-one, six

C-1

A. ... káp ... pen thǣwdaj?

... and ... is how much?

B. ... káp ... pen .........

... and ... is .... ....

C-2

A. ... káp ... pen ... mĭn bōo?

... and ... is ... , isn't it?

B. bōo mĭn, ... káp ... pen ...

No, it isn't. .. and --- is ...


1) The Lao numerical system is a decimal system and with a few exceptions complex numbers are made by multiplying by and/or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: nỳn '1', sǒn '2', sàam '3', sìt '4', hâa '5', hòk '6', cêt '7', pêt '8', kàw '9', sìp '10'.

Multiples of ten (except for 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sàam sìp (3x10), 70 is cêt sìp (7x10), etc. Numbers to be added to ten or multiples of ten occur afterwards, thus 13 is sìp sàam (10+3), 34 is sàam sìp sìt (3x10+4), etc. 20 is sàaw; 22 is sàaw sǒn, etc.

The number one alone is nỳn, but in compounds it is -ét, thus 21 is sàaw-ét; 51, hâa sìp-ét; 61, hòk sìp-ét, etc.

100 is nỳn hòcj (lòcj) or hòcj (lòcj), but 101 is hòcj ét (lòcj ét) and 400 is sìt hòcj (sìt lòcj). hòcj and lòcj are interchangeable. phán-ét means '1100'; 1001 is phán kâp nỳn.

2) kâp means 'and' or 'plus' when used as a connective between Nouns, NP, and numbers. It indicates that something has been added.

(1) sǒn kâp sàam pen hâa 'two plus three is five'
(2) nâaj khúu kâp nakhían 'the teacher and students'

kâp is not used as a sentence connective.

3) thàwdaj 'how much, how many' is used to request a numerical or quantitative response:

Q: sàam sìp sǒn kâp sǒn pen thàwdaj
   'How much is 32 and 2?'
A: sàam sìp sìt. '34.'
APPLICATION

1. If the correct Lao form is written after the arabic number, write 'correct' after the Lao; if it is incorrect, write in the correct Lao form.

   (a) 93 : kāw sīp sāam
   (b) 27 : sōn sīp cēt
   (c) 71 : cēt sīp nynthesis
   (d) 58 : pēst sīp hāa
   (e) 101 : hōoji ét
   (f) 24 : sāaw sīī
   (g) 605 : hōk lōo j hāa
   (h) 42 : sīī sōn
   (i) 1 : ét
   (j) 25 : sāaw sīp hāa

2. Write in the correct answers to the following problems. Use arabic numbers.

   (a) pēst kāp hōk pen
   (b) sāam sīp ét kāp sīī sīp kāw pen
   (c) hāa hōoj kāp cēt sīp cēt pen
   (d) sūn kāp sūn pen
   (e) sāaw kāw kāp pēst sīp cēt pen

Answers: 1(a) correct (b)sāaw cēt (c)cēt sīp-ēt (d)hāa sīp pēst (e)correct (f)correct (g)correct (h)sīī sīp sōn (i)nynthesis (j)sāaw hāa  2(a)14 (b)80 (c)577 (d)0 (e)116
CYCLE 25

M-1

myy nìi

myy nìi mǣn wān njàŋ? What day is today?

today

tomorrow

myy-sýyn

myy-sýyn mǣn wān njàŋ? What day is tomorrow?

myy-hỳy

myy-hỳy mǣn wān njàŋ? What day is the day after tomorrow?

the day after tomorrow

myy-wàán nìi

myy-wàán nìi mǣn wān njàŋ? What day was yesterday?

yesterday

day before yesterday

myy kūn

myy kūn mǣn wān njàŋ? What day was three days ago?

three days ago

sìi myy kūn

sìi myy kūn mǣn wān njàŋ? What day was four days ago?

four days ago

M-2

wān-aathiṭ

myy nìi mǣn wān-aathiṭ Today is Sunday.

Sunday
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laotian Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wăn-can</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mỳy nli mëen wăn-can</td>
<td>Today is Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wăn-ăŋkháan</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mỳy nli mëen wăn-ăŋkháan</td>
<td>Today is Tuesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wăn-phūt</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mỳy nli mëen wăn-phūt</td>
<td>Today is Wednesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wăn-phăhát</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mỳy nli mëen wăn-phăhát</td>
<td>Today is Thursday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wăn-sûk</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mỳy nli mëen wăn-sûk</td>
<td>Today is Friday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wăn-săw</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mỳy nli mëen wăn-săw</td>
<td>Today is Saturday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C-1

A. mỳy nli mëen wăn njàŋ? What day is today?
B. mỳy nli mëen ........ Today is ........

C-2

A. mỳy-wáan nli mëen ..., Yesterday was ..., right?
   mëen bòo?
B. bòo mëen, mỳy-wáan nli No, yesterday was .......
   mëen ........
NOTES

1) m̀ýy 'day' is used in constructions indicating relative time, thus: m̀ýy ǹl̀ī 'today', m̀ýy ỳǹn 'tomorrow', etc. m̀ýy is also used when referring to a period of time, thus s̀ṑŋ m̀ýy 'two days' k̀hǹŋ m̀ýy 'half a day', etc.

wán 'day' is used when giving the names of the days of the week: wán aāthīt 'Sunday', wán āŋkham 'Tuesday', etc.

2) When asking the day of the week, m̀ýy ǹl̀ī m̀s̀n wán njȁn 'What day is today?' is used.

3) k̀s̀n 'before', ago' is used to refer to a specific time in the past. s̀n m̀ýy k̀s̀n 'four days ago', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Starting with the assumption that today is Wednesday fill in the blanks:

(a) m̀ýy h̀ỳy m̀s̀n
(b) s̀n m̀ýy k̀s̀n m̀s̀n
(c) m̀ýy wán ǹl̀ī m̀s̀n
(d) m̀ýy ǹl̀ī m̀s̀n
(e) m̀ýy ỳn m̀s̀n
(f) m̀ýy ỳn m̀s̀n

Answers: 1(a)wán-súk (b)wán-sǎw (c)wán-āŋkham (d)wán-phūt (e)wán-can (f)wán-phāhát
2) Starting with the assumption that today is Sunday, fill in the blanks below:

(a) ___________________________ m랩 wán-anháán
(b) ___________________________ m랩 wán-sāw
(c) ___________________________ m랩 wán-súk
(d) ___________________________ m랩 wán-aathít
(e) ___________________________ m랩 wán-pháhát
(f) ___________________________ m랩 wán-can
(g) ___________________________ m랩 wán-phût

Answers: 2(a)mỳy-hỳy (b)mỳy-wáán nìì (c)mỳy-sỳyn (d)mỳy nìì (e)mỳy kɔɔn (f)mỳy ʏỳn (g)sıı mỳy kɔɔn
CYCLE 26

M-1

mōkkārāa  January
mōkkārāa mēn dyan thīi nny,  January is the first month.
tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

kumphāa  February
kumphāa mēn dyan thīi sōŋ  February is the second month.
tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

mīināa  March
mīināa mēn dyan thīi sāam,  March is the third month.
tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

méesāa  April
méesāa mēn dyan thīi sīi,  April is the fourth month.
tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

phōtsāphāa  May
phōtsāphāa mēn dyan thīi  May is the fifth month.
hāa, tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

mīthūnāa  June
mīthūnāa mēn dyan thīi hōk,  June is the sixth month.
tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

koorakādāa  July
koorakādāa mēn dyan thīi  July is the seventh month.
cēt, tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

What's the next?
sǐnhāa

sǐnhāa mēn dyan thīi pêst, August is the eighth month.
tō paj mēn dyan njāŋ?

M-2

mŏkkāráa

lānçâak dyan mŏkkāráa mēn January
mēn dyan kumphāa

kumphāa

lānçâak dyan kumphāa mēn The month after January is
mēn February.
dyan mîināa

mîināa

lānçâak dyan mîināa mēn The month after February is
mēn March.
dyan mēesāa

mēesāa

lānçâak dyan mēesāa mēn The month after March is April.
mēn dyan phỳtsáphāa

phỳtsáphāa

lānçâak dyan phỳtsáphāa May
mēn dyan mîthúnāa

mîthúnāa

lānçâak dyan mîthúnāa mēn The month after June is July.
mēn dyan koɔrąkādaa
M-3

mōkkāráāa
kūon dyan mōkkāráā mēn dyan thānwāā January

thānwāā
kūon dyan thānwāā mēn dyan phytsácīkāa December

The month before January is December.

The month before December is November.

phytsácīkāa
kūon dyan phytsácīkāa mēn dyan tūláā November

The month before November is October.

tūláā
kūon dyan tūláā mēn dyan kannjāā October

The month before October is September.

kannjāā
kūon dyan kannjāā mēn dyan sīnhāā September

The month before September is August.

sīnhāā
kūon dyan sīnhāā mēn dyan koørkāādāa August

The month before August is July.
LAO BASIC COURSE

C-1

A. ... ອໍານ dyan thîi ..., tȳo ... is the ... month.
   paj ອໍານ dyan nঝъŋ? What's the next?
B. tȳo paj ອໍານ dyan .... The next is ........

C-2

A. lâŋcâak dyan ... ອໍານ What's the month after....?
   dyan nঝъŋ?
B. lâŋcâak dyan ... ອໍານ The month after ... is ...
   dyan ........

C-3

A. kȳn dyan ... ອໍານ dyan What's the month before ...?
   nঝъŋ?
B. kȳn dyan ... ອໍານ dyan ... Before ... is ...  

---------------

โดยการเรียนรู้ประโยคประโยคทั้งหมดในคำใบ้บอกความหมายต่าง ๆ ได้แก่ "ต่อจาก", "ก่อน", "ฝ่าย" และ "ดี" จะนำประโยคจากประโยคต่อไปยังประโยคต่อไปได้.

111
NOTES

1) The names of the months in Lao are (in order): mōkkāráā, kumphāā, míināā, méesāā, phı̂tsáphāā, mîthúnāā, koørākādāā, sîphāā, kannjāā, tūlāā, phı̂tsačikāā, thanwāā.

2) Ordinal numbers (first, second, etc.) are formed by placing thîi before Cardinal numbers (one, two, etc.): thîi nỳn 'first', thîi sām 'third', thîi hōksip '60th', thîi pëstsípkàw '89th', etc.

3) tɔɔ paj 'next' is a Verb Phrase made up of tɔɔ 'to join, extend' + paj 'to go' forward' (in this type of construction). tɔɔ paj may be used to indicate an extension in time or space. In time expressions it normally refers to future time.
   tɔɔ paj mën dyan njān 'What month is next?'

4) lāncâak 'after' is a Verb Phrase and refers to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.
   With NP: lāncâak dyan mōkkāráā 'After January'
   With VP: lāncâak kın khāw 'After eating'
   With S: lāncâak lāaw paj tālāat... 'After he went to the market...'

5) kɔɔn 'before, previous' is a verb. It refers only to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.
   Before NP: kɔɔn dyan thānwāā 'Before December'
   Before VP: kɔɔn paj kın khāw 'Before going to eat'
   Before S: kɔɔn lāaw paj ... 'Before he went...'

112
APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks with the name of the month:
   (a) dyan thíi hók mēnn dyan ________________
   (b) dyan thíi sip-ét mēnn dyan ________________
   (c) dyan thíi sōn mēnn dyan ________________
   (d) dyan thíi hâa mēnn dyan ________________
   (e) dyan thíi pêet mēnn dyan ________________
   (f) dyan thíi sīi mēnn dyan ______ ________

2. Fill in the blanks with the number of the month:
   (a) dyan thíi ___________ mēnn dyan míináá
   (b) dyan thíi ___________ mēnn dyan mōkkārāá
   (c) dyan thíi ___________ mēnn dyan tūlāá
   (d) dyan thíi ___________ mēnn dyan koorākādāa
   (e) dyan thíi ___________ mēnn dyan kannjāá
   (f) dyan thíi ___________ mēnn dyan thānwāá

3. Fill in the blanks with tōp paj, kōjn, or lāncåak as required:
   (a) _________________ dyan phytsácíkaa mēnn dyan tūlāá
   (b) _________________ dyan kumpháa mēnn dyan míináá
   (c) kannjāá mēnn dyan thíi kāw. ______ mēnn dyan tūlāá

Answers: 1(a)mīthúnáá (b)tūláá (c)kumpháa (d)phytsápháa
         (e)sīnháá (f)mēesáá, 2(a)sāam(b)nyn (c)sīp (d)cēt(e)kāw
         (f)sīp sōn, 3(a)kōjn (b)lāncåak (c)tōp paj
CYCLE 27

M-1

mỳy nìì

mỳy nìì mëèn wànthìì thàwdaj? What’s the date today?

wàn-khèt

birthday

wàn-khèt càw mëèn wànthìì thàwdaj? What’s your birth date?

piì-màj láaw

Lao New Year

piì-màj láaw mëèn wànthìì thàwdaj? What’s the date of the Lao New Year?

wàn ìèkkàràat

Independence Day

wàn ìèkkàràat mëèn wànthìì thàwdaj? What’s the date of Independence Day?

wàn ràthàthàmmànnùùn

Constitution Day

wàn ràthàthàmmànnùùn mëèn wànthìì thàwdaj? What’s the date of Constitution Day?

wàn kàmmàkoon

Labor Day

wàn kàmmàkoon mëèn wànthìì thàwdaj? What’s the date of Labor Day?

M-2

kèèt

born

càw kèèt wànthìì thàwdaj? What date were you born?


càw tǝnŋáan wǝnthīi thǝwdaŋ?

What date did you get married on?

càw máa hɔɔt wǝnthīi thǝwdaŋ?

What date did you arrive there?

C-1

A. mỳy nìi mǝn wǝnthīi thǝwdaŋ?

What's the date today?

B. mỳy nìi mǝn wǝnthīi sípsìf phỳtsápháa piì phán kàw hòɔj cét-síp

Today is the 14th of May 1970.

C-2

A. càw kǝet wǝnthīi thǝwdaŋ?

What date were you born?

B. khɔj kǝet wǝnthīi síp hâa mɔkkârâa piì phán kàw hòɔj sǐsǐp-êt

I was born on the fifteenth of January nineteen forty-one.
C-3

A. càw sì sók deéntáañ
wánthíi kàw mènn boò?
You are going to begin your
trip on the ninth, right?

B. boò mènn, khôj sì sók
deéntáañ wánthíi sìp
mîináa
No. I'll begin my trip on
the tenth of March.

NOTES

1) wán thíi thàwdaj (lit. the how many-eth day) 'What day?' is
used in asking for dates. In the response the sequence of
elements is (a) day (b) month (c) year.

Q: càw kêt wánthíi thàwdaj
A: khôj kêt wánthíi sìp hâa mökkàráá
    pîî phàn kàw hòoî sîl sìp-ét
    'When were you born?'
    'I was born January 15, 1941.'
(a) day: wánthíi sìp hâa
    'the fifteenth'
(b) month: mökkàráá
    'January'
(c) year: pîî phàn kàw hòoî sîl
    sìp-ét
    (Lit. year thousand
    nine hundred forty
    one) '1941'

pîî 'year' always precedes the designation for year. The
year is always given thusly: phàn ... hòoî ... (one thousand
... hundred ...) and never: sîp kàw hòoî ... (nineteen
hundred ...).
APPLICATION

1. On a separate piece of paper write out in full the dates given below, then check your answers:

(a) May 7, 1931  (b) September 23, 1919
(c) February 1, 1947  (d) December 25, 1963
(e) August 30, 1926  (f) April 14, 1970

Answers: (a) wánthíi cét dyan phytsápháa phán kàw hòoj sáam sìp-èt (b) wánthíi sáaw sáam dyan kannjáa phán kàw hòoj sìp kàw (c) wánthíi nỳŋ dyan kumpháa phán kàw hòoj sìp cét (d) wánthíi sáaw hâa dyan thánwáa phán kàw hòoj hók sìp sáam (e) wánthíi sáam sìp dyan sînháa phán kàw hòoj sáaw hók (f) wánthíi sìp sìp dyan méesáa phán kàw hòoj cét sìp

117
CYCLE 28

M-1

myy

càw si paj myy daj? When (what day) will you go?
day

pii

càw si paj pii daj? When (what year) will you go?
year

aathfit

càw si paj aathfit daj? When (which week) will you go?
week

ookâat

càw si paj ookâat daj? When (on what occasion) will you go?
ocasion

wéélâa

càw si paj wéélâa daj? When will you go?
time

sûamóon

càw si paj sûamóon daj? Which hour will you go?
hour

dyan

càw si paj dyan daj? What month will you go?
month

M-2

sûamóon thîi sǒn second hour

khôj si paj sûamóon thîi I will go at the second hour.
sǒn
aathît nâa
  khâj si paj aathît nâa
  next week
I will go next week.

piî nâa
  khâj si paj piî nâa
  next year
I will go next year.

mîy ëyr
  khâj si paj mîy ëyn
tomorrow
I will go tomorrow.

nâj ookâat bun thàat lûanja
  khâj si paj nâj ookâat bun
  on the occasion of That Luang
  thàat lûanja
  festival
I will go on the occasion
of That Luang festival.

wêelâa càw mâa
  khâj si paj wêelâa càw mâa
  when you come
I will go when you come.

M-3

khâw hóorhîan
  myy daj càw si khâw
  enter school
  hóorhîan?

sôk lûuk
  myy daj càw si sôk lûuk?
  give birth
  When will you have your baby?

cên tamlûat
  myy daj càw si cên
  report to the police
  tamlûat?

aw khîyn hâj láaw
  myy daj càw si aw khîyn
  return (it) to him
  hâj láaw?

  When will you return it
  to him?
hian særēt

mýy daj càw si hian sørēt

finish study

When will you finish your studies?

M-4

mýy nli càw si hēt nhăn?

What are you going to do today?

aathīt nli càw si paj sāj?

Where are you going to go this week?

sūamōon nli càw si hian nhăn?

What are you going to study this hour?

wéelāa nli càw phāk jūu sāj?

Where are you staying at the present time?

paj thīaw

pīl nli láaw si paj thīaw sāj?

to go on a pleasure trip (or walk)

Where is he going to go on a pleasure trip this year?

sōon

mýy wáncan nli láaw si sōon phāj?

to teach

Who is she going to teach this Monday?

M-5

týkbēt

aathīt nli khēj si paj týkbēt

to fish

This week I am going to go fishing.

kinkhāw pāa

aathīt nli khēj si paj kinkhāw pāa.

picnic

This week I'm going to go picnicking.
khés̄m thálée
aathít n̄̀ li khɔj si paj
khés̄m thálée

l̄̀âa s̄́t
aathít n̄̀ li khɔj si paj
l̄̀âa s̄́t

thatsuāacōon
aathít n̄̀ li khɔj si paj
thatsuāacōon

t̄̄âaŋ p̄̄áthēet
aathít n̄̀ li khɔj si paj
t̄̄âaŋ p̄̄áthēet

C-1
(mỳy)
A. càw si paj mỳy daj?
(mỳy n̄̀li)
B. khɔj si paj mỳy n̄̀li

day
{ When
{ What
today
I am going today.

C-2
(lâaw)

she

A. lâaw si paj bɔɔ?
B. paj

Is she going?
Yes, she is going.
(wééláa) time

A. láaw si paj wééláa daj? When is she going?
B. láaw si paj wééláa She is going when we go.
phùakháw paj

C-3

A. myy ni li càw si hêt njăng? What are you going to do today?
B. myy ni li khøj si paj Today I'm going to go
kinkhâw pâa picnicking.

C-4

A. pii daj càw si hían What year will you complete
sâmôet your studies?
B. khøj si hían sâmôet pii nêa I'll complete my studies
next year.
NOTES

1) Time Expressions, such as aathit nâa, etc. may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position with little or no difference in meaning. Their position is determined by the type of sentence they occur in. (1) When they occur in sentences with njân or sâm as question words, they are in sentence initial position:

Q: mỳy nìi cảw si hêt njân 'What are you going to do today?'

A: mỳy nìi khâj si hêt kaan 'Today I'm going to work.'

2) When they occur in other types of sentences, they may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position:

{ Q: mỳy daj cảw si khâw hóonhían 'When will you start school?'

   Q: cảw si khâw hóonhían mỳy daj 'When will you start school?'

   A: khâj si khâw hóonhían mỳy ëyn 'I'm starting tomorrow.'

   A: mỳy ëyn 'Tomorrow'.

mỳy ëyn khâj si khâw hóonhían might occur in a statement, but it would not occur in a response to a question.

2) daj 'which, what' may occur after time words like mỳy 'day'
aathit 'week', pìi 'year', etc. with the meaning 'one particular unit of time': mỳy daj 'what day?', pìi daj 'which year', etc. Or it may occur after wëelâa 'time' with the meaning 'indefinite time': wëelâa daj 'when (what time)'

3) wëelâa 'time' is used in the following senses:

(a) a time for doing something

wëelâa kin khâw 'time to eat'
(b) a particular moment or period of time

\[ \text{wééláa láaw máa} \quad \text{'when (the time) he came'} \]

In this last sense it may serve as a connector between the Main Sentence and an included sentence as illustrated in the example below:

```
S
 NP      VP
 MV       NP
      S
       NP  VP
    khôj   si paj  wééláa  caw  máa
  (I)      will go  time  you  come)

'I will go when you come.'
```

\[ \text{kERN 'before' and lÀncáak 'after' can replace wééláa in the construction above.} \]

**APPLICATION**

1. In the sentence khôj si paj piì nàa, piì nàa is (a) VP (b) NP (c) MV (d) time expression.

2. A possible answer to the question càw si máa piì daj would be (a) aathít nàa (b) piì daj (c) boò máa (d) piì nàa

Answers: 1b and d, 2d
3. Which of the following are acceptable answers to the question 
cày sı paj weelāa daj (a) myy yyn, (b) nāj ьооkāat bun thàat 
luăn (c) aathīt nāa (d) sua moon thī sıon (e) all of these.

4. Give reasonable answers to the following questions: (a) cày sı 
māa weelāa daj (b) dyan nāa ьaj cày sı paj sıaj (c) aathīt
nāa cày sı paj tăt phɔm juu haan tăt phɔm ьoo (d) lāw sı paj
myy daj (e) cày sı sōokhāa phyan lāw weelāa daj...

5. Using weelāa as a connective, combine the following pairs of sentences.

(a) khāj sı paj ___________ cày māa

(b) lāw sı māa ___________ khācày paj

(c) lāw sı paj thōorāsāp ___________ cày māa

(d) khāj sı paj kin khāw ___________ cày māa

(e) déknōj phum nān līn ___________ mē lāw fān withānjū?

(f) lāw sı sōn thōorālēek ___________ phōc lāw māa

6. Repeat No.5 using kɔń as a connective.

7. Repeat No.5 using lāncâak as a connective.

Answers: 3e, 4(a)khāj sı māa aathīt nāa (or) aathīt nāa, etc.
(b)dyan nāa lāw sı paj... (c)bōj, bōj paj (or)
si paj (d)myy yyn (or) lāw sı paj myy yyn
(e)dyan nāa (or) khāj sı sōokhāa phyan lāw dyan
nāa 5put weelāa in the spaces between sentences
6put kɔń in the spaces 7put lāncâak in the spaces.
CYCLE 29

M-1

pêst  eight

diawnli pêst móon  It's eight o'clock.

sip  ten

diawnli sip móon  It's ten o'clock.

pêst... khên  eight, half

diawnli pêst móon khên  It's half past eight.

kàw, síphâa  nine, fifteen

diawnli kàw móon síphâa  It's 9:15.

cét, njân sip  seven, ten of

diawnli cét móon njân sip  It's ten to seven (6:50).

hâa... sáaw  five, twenty

diawnli hâa móon sáaw  It's 5:20

sãam, njân síphâa  three, 15 of

diawnli sãam móon njân síphâa  It's 2:45.

șî, sip  four, ten

diawnli șî móon sip  It's 4:10.

hôk... khên  six, half

diawnli hôk móon khên  It's 6:30.
M-2

diawnli caak mooŋ lèsu?  What time is it?

C-1

A. diawnli caak mooŋ lèsu  What time is it?

B. diawnli ..........  It's ........

NOTES

1) mooŋ 'o'clock' is used in asking and telling time.

Asking the time:

\[
\text{diawnli} + \text{Number (Q)} + \text{mooŋ lèsu}
\]

\[
\text{diawnli caak } \text{mooŋ lèsu}
\]
'What time is it?'

2) Telling time:

\[
(\text{diawnli}) + \text{Number} + \text{mooŋ} + \text{Part of hour}
\]

\[
\text{diawnli } \text{pést } \text{mooŋ } \text{síp hâa}
\]
(now it's 8 o'clock 15)
'It's 8:15.'
If it is after the half hour, the number of minutes remaining before the hour is indicated by putting น้ำ่น 'yet' after the hour followed by the number of minutes remaining:

สิป โม่น น้ำ่น สิป
(ten o'clock yet ten)
'10 minutes to ten.'

APPLICATION

1. Using the numbers as a guide, complete the following time expressions:

(a) diawnli pêst móon __________________ (8:15)
(b) diawnli ______________ móon (9:00)
(c) diawnli sip móon ____________ sip (9:50)
(d) diawnli sou móon _____________ (4:30)
(e) diawnli ____________ móon lèsw? (What time is it?)
(f) diawnli hàa móon _____________ (5:10)
(g) diawnli sọơn móon nján ___________ (1:35)
(h) diawnli cêt móon _____________ (7:20)

2. Look at your watch and write out in full the correct time on this line. ________________________________

Answers: 1(a)sİphâa (b)kàw (c)njâŋ (d)khēŋ (e)câk (f)sİp (g)sâw hàa (h)sâw 2you'll have to decide what the correct answer to this is yourself.
CYCLE 30

M-1

pêst, sàw
khôj paj sỳy khôn pêst
môon sàw

sípsâơn, thian
khôj paj sỳy khôn sìp
sôon môon thian

sôon, bâaj
khôj paj sỳy khôn bâaj
sôon môon

hâa, lêeñ
khôj paj sỳy khôn hâa
môon lêeñ

kàw, ka-Ankh'yyn
khôj paj sỳy khôn kàw
môon ka-Ankh'yyn

sìp ét, khôn
khôj paj sỳy khôn sìp-
et môon khôn

8, morning
I go shopping at eight in the morning.

12, noon
I go shopping at 12 noon.

2, afternoon
I go shopping at 2 in the afternoon.

5, evening
I go shopping at 5 in the evening.

9, night
I go shopping at 9 in the evening.

11, half
I go shopping at 11:30.
M-2

hóonghían

jàw paj hóonghían cák móon? What time do you go to school?

hētkaan

jàw paj hētkaan cák móon? What time do you go to work?

sỳy khɔɔng

jàw paj sỳy khɔɔng cák móon? What time did you go shop?

kin kaafée

jàw paj kin kaafée cák móon? What time do you go to drink coffee?

dỳm nàmsàa

jàw paj dỳm nàmsàa cák móon? What time do you go to drink tea?

nóon

jàw paj nóon cák móon? What time do you go to bed?

lóoj nàm

jàw paj lóoj nàm cák móon? What time do you go to swim?

M-3

hóonghían, kàw móon sàw school, 9:00 a.m.

kñhɔŋ paj hóonghían kàw móon I go to school at 9:00 a.m.

sàw
hētkān, pēst móon khēn toon saw
khôj paj hēt kān pēst móon khēn toon saw

sîy khôn, sîp-él móon saw
khôj paj sîy khôn sîp-él móon saw

kin kaafé, bàaj sâm móon
khôj paj kin kaafé bàaj sâm móon

dîm nàmsàa, bàaj sî móon khēn
khôj paj dîm nàmsàa bàaj sî móon khēn

nîn, sîp móon kaankhîyn
khôj paj nîn sîp móon kaankhîyn

bônh sîînî, cît móon lêsî
khôj paj bônh sîînî cît móon lêsî

lôcî nâm, sîp sôcô móon thîn
khôj paj lôcî nâm sîp sôcô móon thîn

work, 8:30 a.m. I go to work at 8:30 a.m.

shopping, 11 a.m. I went shopping at 11 a.m.

drink coffee, 3 p.m. I went to drink coffee at 3:00 p.m.

drink tea, 4:30 p.m. I went to drink tea at 4:30 p.m.

(go) to bed, 10:00 p.m. I go to bed at 10:00 p.m.

go to the movies, 7:00 p.m. I went to the movies at 7:00 p.m.

go swimming, 12 noon I go swimming at twelve noon.
C-1
(lọọj nàm)

A. càw si paj lọọj nàm cák móọŋ?  What time will you go to swimming?

B. khọj si paj kàw móọŋ njàn sîp hàa  I will go at a quarter to 9.

C-2
(săj)

A. láaw paj săj?  Where did he go?

B. láaw paj kin kaafée  He went to have coffee.

(cák móọŋ)

A. láaw paj cák móọŋ?  What time did he go?

B. láaw paj pĕst móọŋ sîp.  He went at ten past eight.

132
Notes

1. Words designating the part of the day like sàw 'a.m.' are usually placed after móŋ in time expressions, thus:
   - cét móŋ sàw '7 a.m.'
   - síp sōng móŋ thian' '12 noon'
   - háa móŋ lēŋ '5 p.m.'
   - síp-ét móŋ kaangkan '11 p.m.'

The approximate period of time referred to by such terms as sàw, etc. is indicated on the clock faces below:

![Clock Diagrams](image-url)
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following examples:

(a) 9:00 a.m. *kàw móŋ* ____________________________
(b) 1:30 p.m. __________ móŋ khēŋ
(c) 5:00 p.m. hâa móŋ ____________________________
(d) 12:00 sip sōŋ móŋ ____________________________
(e) 4:00 p.m. bāmj st̂t ____________________________
(f) 11:00 a.m. sip-êt móŋ __________________________
(g) 10:00 p.m. sip móŋ ____________________________
(h) 8:00 p.m. pēst móŋ ____________________________
(i) 6:50 cēt móŋ _________ sip
(j) 3:20 p.m. bāmj sāam móŋ _______________________
(k) 10:30 a.m. sip móŋ ________ toon sāw
(l) 12:15 p.m. sip sōŋ móŋ ________ toon thīāŋ

2. Complete the blanks with the time that you normally do the things indicated:

(a) khēŋ paj hōnghīān ____________________________
(b) khēŋ paj kin kaafée __________________________
(c) khēŋ paj sỳy khēŋ ____________________________
(d) khēŋ paj nōon ________________________________

Answers: 1(a)sāw (b)bāmj (c)lēŋ (d)thīāŋ (e)mōŋ (f)sāw (g)kaāŋ kh’yēn, lēŋ (h)lēŋ (i)njan (j)sāaw (k)khēŋ (l)sīphāa 2you will have to check own answers here.
CYCLE 31

M-1

sáwmjàj, náathìi, síp  
láaw sáwmjàj síp náathìi  
rest, minute, ten  
He rested ten minutes.

phàkphòón, aathìt, sàam  
láaw phàkphòón sàam aathìt  
take vacation, week, three  
He took three weeks vacation.

bòò sábaaj, mìyy, sìì  
láaw bòò sábaaj sìì mìyy  
sick, day, four  
He was sick for three days.

tìisèk, dyan, sììì  
láaw tìisèk sììì dyan  
fight the war, month, two  
He fought (in a war) for two months.

jùù myànnòok, pìi, hók  
láaw jùù myànnòok hók pìi  
be abroad, year, six  
He spent six years abroad.

kàncaj, wìnàathìi, sàamsìphàa  
láaw kàncaj sàamsìphàa  
hold one's breath, second, thirty-five  
He held his breath for 35 seconds.

wìnàathìi  
thàa càw, sùamòon, khèñ  
láaw thàa càw khèñ sùamòon  
wait for you, hour, half  
He waited for you for half-an hour.

khàw thèw  
láaw khàw thèw sùamòon  
form a line  
He was in line for one and a half hours.

khèñ
M-2

jùu mýañ láaw, pii

láaw jùu mýañ láaw cák pii?

be in Laos, year

lôngtháañ, sùamóon

láaw lôngtháañ cák sùamóon?

lose one's way, hour

mán, bôthián, náathíi

láaw mán bôthián cák náathíi?

read, lesson, minute

deêentháañ, aathít

láaw deêentháañ cák aathít?

travel, week

tiisék, mỳy

láaw tiisék cák mỳy?

fight the war, day

M-3

phākphōn

càw si phākphōn don paandaj?

rest, take vacation

fûk-hát

càw si fûk-hát don paandaj?

practice

pá? wàj, lōt

càw si pá? lōt càw wàj nìi don paandaj?

leave, car

How many years was he in Laos?

How many hours was he lost?

How many minutes did he read the lessons?

How many weeks did he travel?

How many days was he in battle?

How long will you take for vacation?

How long will you practice?

How long will you leave your car here?
sêksaà

càw si sêksaà don paandaj?

How long will you be delayed?
delay, be delayed

khêñ, láaw

càw si khêñ láaw don paandaj?

How long will you imprison him?
imprison, he

khùapkhùm

càw si khùapkhùm láaw don paandaj?

How long will you keep him under control?
control

C-1

A. láaw si hêt njàñ?

What is he going to do?

B. láaw si (sàwmyaj)

He is going to (take a rest.)

A: láaw si (sàwmyaj) cák (nàathìi)?

How many (minutes) will he (rest)?

B. (sàaw.nàathìi).

(Twenty minutes).

C-2

A. khácàw si hêt njàñ?

What are they going to do?

B. khácàw si (paj phêkphêjñ).

They are going to (take a vacation.)

A. khácàw si (paj phêkphêjñ) don paandaj?

How long will they be going?

B. (sàaø aathìt).

(Two weeks).
NOTES

1) The following words are used for various periods of time: pii 'year', dyan 'month', aathit 'week', m'yy 'day', suamoon 'hour', naathii 'minute', and winaathii 'second.' If one wishes to find out precisely how many units of time (hour, minute, etc.) were used in a particular activity cák + Time Unit is used: cák aathit 'how many weeks', etc. The question can be put in a more general and less precise way by saying don paandaj (lit. long to what extent) 'How long?'. Don paandaj is always used in situations in which the speaker has no idea how long a time was involved (hence no knowledge of what time units the response might be given in).

2) khñh 'half' may occur before or after a Time Unit. When it occurs before the unit it means 'half of the unit': khñh m'yy 'half a day', khñh pii 'half a year', etc.

When khñh occurs after a time unit, it means 'one and one half units': suamoon khñh 'one and a half hours', naathii khñh 'one and a half minutes', etc.

If numbers precede a time unit and khñh follows it, khñh means 'one half is added to the other number':

s'aam m'yy khñh '3 1/2 days', hók pii khñh '6 1/2 years.' etc.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below with the correct information:

(a) ____________ nỳŋ mìi sìp-sòŋ dyan.
(b) naathii nỳŋ mìi 60 ____________
(c) ____________ nỳŋ mìi 24 suamoon

Answers: 1(a)pii (b)wìnàathii (c)m'yy
(d) dyan nых мн мь 30 ______________
(e) 60 wínáathií мн 1 ______________
(f) 4 súamóon мн 240 ______________
(g) 12 dyan мн 1 ______________
(h) 7 мьь мн мн 1 ______________
(i) мьь ных мн мн 86,000 ______________

(j) ______________ súamóon (how many hours?).
(k) ______________ paandaj (how long?).
(l) ______________ súamóon (half an hour).
(m) kàw мьь ______________ (9 1/2 days).
(n) pii ______________ (1 1/2 years).

Answers: (d)mьь (e)náathií (f)náathií (g)pii (h)aathít
(1)wínáathií (j)cák (k)don (1)khññ
(m)khññ (n)khññ
CYCLE 32

M-1

mìi wéeláa, phóo, sëmláp  have time, enough, for
  càw bɔɔ mìi wéeláa phóo What don't you have
  sëmláp njǎŋ? enough time for?

sàj

  càw sàj wéeláa nli nēt use
    njǎŋ? What did you use this time

phèeŋ wàj

  càw phèeŋ wéeláa wàj nēt save
    njǎŋ? What did you save the time

sìa wéeláa, njòon

  càw sìa wéeláa njòon njǎŋ? lose time, because of

What caused you to lose time?

M-2

khúakin

  khôj bɔɔ mìi wéeláa phóo cook
    sëmláp khúakin. I don't have enough time
to cook.

pənŋ, lōtcák

  khôj sàj wéeláa nli pənŋ fix, motor bike
    lōtcák. I used this time to fix the

sàwmyàj

  khôj phèeŋ wéeláa nli wàj rest
    sàwmyàj I saved this time for resting

140
sòokhāa, phyan
khøj sìa wéeláa njòon
sòokhāa phyan khøj

look for, friend
I lost the time in looking for my friend.

M-3
hían nãns̀yy, aathít
càw mìi wéeláa hían nãns̀yy
cák aathít?

study, week
How many weeks do you have for studying?

khúakin, suamóon
càw mìi wéeláa khúakin
cák suamóon?

cook, hour
How many hours do you have for cooking?

sòokhāa, myy
càw sàj wéeláa sòokhāa
phyan càw cák myy?

look for, day
How many days did you use in looking for your friend?

peèn lót, suamóon
càw sàj wéeláa peèn lót
cák suamóon?

fix the car, hour
How many hours did you use for fixing your car?

sìa wéeláa, khôn sàj
càw sìa wéeláa sòokhāa
khôn sàj càw cák myy?

lose time, servant
How many days did you want for looking for your servant?

peèn, thó ráthât
càw sàj wéeláa peèn
thó ráthât càk suamóon?

fix, television
How many hours did it take you to fix the television set?
mì, dyan, pêst
   càw mìi wêelâa hiân phâasâa
   láaw pêst dyan
sâwmyaj, náathîi, síphâa
   càw mìi wêelâa sâwmyaj
   síphâa nâathîi
sàj, kînkhâw, sâamsîp
   càw sàj wêelâa kînkhâw
   sâamsîp náathîi.
sîces, lîaŋ, sàaw
   càw sàj wêelâa sîces, lîaŋ nî sàaw náathîi
sîphâa
   càw sîa wêelâa khûakin
   sîphâa náathîi
thàa, hàa
   càw sîa wêelâa thàa phyan
   càw hàa sâmôon

eight have, month, eight
  You have eight months to study Lao.
rest, minute, fifteen
  You have fifteen minutes to rest.
use, eat, thirty
  You took thirty minutes to eat.
explain, matter, twenty
  You took twenty minutes to explain this matter.
fifteen
  You wasted fifteen minutes cooking.
wait for, five
  You wasted five hours waiting for your friend.
C-1

A. caa bọ mìi wêelāa phọc saamlēp njäng?
   You don't have enough time for what?

B. khǐj bọ mìi wêelāa phọc
   saamlēp khuākin
   I don't have enough time to cook.

C-2

A. caa sâa wêelāa sɔokhāa
   lāaw cāk nāathīi?
   How much time did you waste looking for him?

B. khǐj sâa wêelāa stisiphāa
   nāathīi
   I wasted forty five minutes.

C-3

A. caa mìi wêelāa phọc bōo?
   Do you have enough time?

B. wêelāa saamlēp njäng?
   Enough time for what?

A. saamlēp (kuākin).
   For (cooking).

B. phọc, khǐj mìi wêelāa
   lāaj sip nāathīi
   Oh yes, I have tens of minutes.

นักเรียนจะสอนเรา "ไม่" และ "ต้องไม่" ไวยากรณ์อย่างไร? จีต้าม่ำสระนิยมใช้ตัว
คณิตศาสตร์ ง่ายๆ อะไรๆ ใช่...อะไรเสียบลุยเรียนและกินป่านใด?

143
NOTES

1) As was indicated in Cycle 28 weēlāa 'time' may be followed by VP indicating some kind of activity: weēlāa kin khāw 'time to eat/for eating'. When weēlāa is followed by phōo 'enough, sufficient', sāmlāp 'for the purpose of' occurs before the VP of Purpose:

mīi weēlāa phōo sāmlāp khūakin (have time enough for (to) cook)

'have enough time to cook'

In questions the VP of Purpose is replaced by njān mīi weēlāa phōo sāmlāp njān? 'You have sufficient time for what?'

2) njōon 'because of, due to' + VP of Activity is used to provide an explanation for some action.

khāj sīa weēlāa njōon sōokhāa phyān khāj

(I lost time due to looking for my friend.)

'I spent time (in vain) looking for my friend.'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) khāj mīi weēlāa ________________ (fix motorbike)

(b) cāw bōo mīi weēlāa ________________ (to rest)

(c) lāaw sīa weēlāa ____________ thāa phyān lāaw (due to)

Answers: 1(a)pēn lōtcāk (b)sāwmēaj (c) njōon
(d) khọj bọ mì wéláa _______ sãmlāp khuakin (enough time...)
(e) càw sàj wéláa kin khāw cák _______? (how many minutes)
(f) càw mìi wéláa ___________ hók dyān (study Lao)
(g) wéláa ___________ njǎŋ (for what?)
(h) càw sǐa wéláa sǒokhǎa khōnsàj càw _______ (how long?)

2. Answer the following questions:
   (a) mỳy wáan nìi càw sàj wéláa hían pháasǎa lāaw don paandaj?
   (b) mỳy yyn càw si mìi wéláa nóon cák sùamóor?
   (c) wán sàw lèsw nìi (last Saturday) càw jyyn thàa mìa càw don paandaj?
   (d) mỳy yyn càw si mìi wéláa phòo sãmlāp hían pháasǎa lāaw bòo?
   (e) càw sǐa wéláa njìón njǎŋ?

Answers: 1(d)phòo (e)náathīi (f)hían pháasǎa lāaw
(g)sãmlāp (h)don paandaj 2You can work out the answers yourself.
CYCLE 33

M-1

lọt mée
khọj si paj nám lọt mée I will go by bus.

hya
khọj si paj nám hya I will go by boat.

hya bin
khọj si paj nám hya bin I will go by airplane.

lọt
khọj si paj nám lọt I will go by car.

lọt thįip
khọp si paj nám lọt thįip I will go by bicycle.

lọt fáj
khọj si paj nám lọt fáj I will go by train.

s省委 lọc
khọj si paj nám s省委 lọc I will go by tricycle.

M-2

nám
with, by

càw si paj nám njăŋ? How will you go?

nįsw daj
how

càw si paj nįsw daj? How will you go?
C-1
(nám)
with, by
A. càw si paj nám njǎŋ? How will you go?
(lôt)
car
B. khǎj si paj nám (lôt) I will go by (car).

C-2
(néswdaj)
how
A. càw si paj néswdaj? How will you go?
(hýa)
boat
B. khǎj si paj nám (hýa). I will go by (boat).

NOTES

1) Mode of Transportation may be indicated by nám ' (to go) along
with' + Type of Vehicle following a verb of motion.

NP + MV + VP (Mode of Transportation)
khǎj  si paj  nám lôt mée
(I will go go along with bus)
'I will go by bus.'
2) The Verb Phrase น้ม + Vehicle may be questioned in either of two ways:

Statement: ขะจี่ ซี่ ป้า น้ม ล่อต 'I'll go by car'.

Question 1: ค้าว ซี่ ป้า น้ม น้ ำน 'How will you go?'

Question 2: ค้าว ซี่ ป้า น้ ำน ด้า 'How will you go?'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence ขะจี่ ซี่ ป้า น้ม ล่อต ร่ำฟ้า, น้ม ล่อต ร่ำฟ้า is (a) NP (b) VP (c) preposition plus noun (d) WV (e) predicate.

2. In the question ค้าว ซี่ ป้า น้ม น้ ำน, น้ ำน probably refers to (a) a person (b) a vehicle (c) a motion (d) a place.

3. In the question ค้าว ซี่ ป้า น้ ำน นะวแทน, น้ ำน means something like (a) how? (b) manner, way (c) by what means? (d) what? (e) none of these.

4. Complete the following sentences:
   (a) ________ สี่ ป้า น้ม ห้า (b) ค้าว สิกา ป้า น้ ำน ________?
   (c) ล้าว สี่ ป้า ______ ห้า บิน (d) ขะจี่ สี่ ป้า น้ม ________ มี่
   (e) ค้าว สี่ ป้า ______ น้ ำน?

5. Translate the following sentences into English:
   (a) ล้าว สี่ ป้า น้ม ล่อตฝ้า (b) ค้าว มา่า หอุนทิัน น้ม น้ ำน?
   (c) 떨้าว ค้าว สี่ ป้า นะาานาห้าน, ค้าว สิกา ป้า น้ม น้ ำน?
   (d) โพยัน ค้าว สิกา ป้า นะวแทน?

Answers: 1b, 2b, 3b, 4(a)ค้าว, ขะจี่, etc. (b)ด้าจ (c)น้ม (d)ล่อต (e)น้ม 5(a)He'll go by train. (b)How did you come to school? (c)When you go to the restaurant, how will you go? (d)How did your friend go?
M-1

náaj tháañ
láaw si paj nám náaj tháañ  He will go with the guide.
a guide

káp paj
láaw si káp paj nám náaj return tháañ

lùuk láaw
láaw si káp paj nám lùuk his children
láaw

pýksäa
láaw si pýksäa nám lùuk consult
láaw

phuũ hûam náan
láaw si pýksäa nám phuũ He will consult with his colleagues.
colleagues
hûam náan láaw

aasăj jũu
láaw si aasăj jũu nám phuũ He will live with his colleagues.
live
hûam náan láaw

phûnđoon
láaw si aasăj jũu nám relatives He will live with his relatives.
phûnđoon láaw
M-2

kh쇼 anʊnjàät
láaw si kh쇼 anʊnjàät nám phتجديد
ask permission
From whom will he ask permission?

fỳkhàt
láaw si paj fỳkhàt nám phتجديد
practice
With whom is he going to practice?

hùam ñään
láaw si paj hùam ñään nám phتجديد
cooperate
With whom is he going to cooperate?

sámáŋ hètkaan
láaw si paj sámáŋ hètkaan nám phتجديد
apply for the job
To whom is he going to apply for the job?

C-1

(pỳksाa)

A. cày si paj pỳksाa nám phتجديد
consult
Who are you going to consult with?

(náaj thàañ)

B. kh쇼 si paj pỳksাa nám náaj thàañ
guide
I am going to consult with the guide.
C-2

(aasəj jəu)

to live

A. phəj si māa aasəj jəu nām cəw? Who will come to live with you?

(phəm hūam ᵏāan)
colleague

B. phəm hūam ᵏāan khəj si māa aasəj jəu nām khəj My colleague is going to come to live with me.

C-3

(lūuk)

children

A. cəw si paj hət njəŋ nām lūukcəw? What are you going to do with your children?

(fykhát)

practice

B. khəj si paj fykhát nām khacəw I am going to practice with them.
NOTES

1) When nám is followed by NP in which the N is human, the relationship between the persons involved may be any one of the following:

(a) Accompaniment:

láaw sî kâp paj nán luûk láaw
'He will return with his child.'

(b) Joint effort (with participants having equal status).

láaw sî pyksâa nám phuu hûâm nân láaw
'He will consult with his colleagues.'

(c) Joint effort (with participants have unequal status).

láaw sî paj sâmâk hêtkaan nâm phäj?
'Who is he going to apply to for a job?'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) láaw sî njaâñ paj nâm nakhîan (b) láaw sî khîî lôt nám khôj (c) laaw sî hîaan nâm naaj khuu (d) laaw sî khôôthoot nâm khaçaw (e) laaw sî paj hâa paa nâm khaçaw (f) laaw sî waw nâm naaj khuu (g) laaw jîm myan laaw nâm phôô laaw (h) laaw bôô mak hêtviâk nâm hûa nêa laaw (i) laaw khôô paj naaj myan nâm khaçaw (j) laaw sî bôô pyksâa nâm phên.

Answers: 1(a) He will walk with the students. (b) He will ride with me. (c) He will study with the teacher (or under the teacher) (d) He will ask their pardon. (e) He will go fishing with them. (f) He will talk with (or to) the teacher. (g) He lives in Laos with his father. (h) He doesn't like to work with his boss. (i) He asked (to be allowed) to go into town with them. (j) He won't consult with him.
CYCLE 35

M-1

njān

kh*j si njān {paj
{māa
to walk

khāp lōt

kh*j si khāp lōt {paj
{māa
I will walk.
to drive

lēn

kh*j si lēn {paj
{māa
to run

khū hýa

kh*j si khū hýa {paj
{māa
I will go by boat.
to ride in a boat

tèn khām

kh*j si tèn khām {paj
{māa
I will jump over it.
to jump over

lǒcj nàam

kh*j si lǒcj nàam {paj
{māa
I will swim (there).
to swim

153
M-2

นาม

càw si paj nám njān

How will you go?

how

càw si paj nésw daj

How will you go?

M-3

น้า

lāaw njaāŋ { paj

māa

bàannòok

He walked to the country side.

khī māa

lāaw khī { māa

paj

bàannòok

He rode a horse to the country side.

khī kian

lāaw khī kian { paj

māa

bàannòok

He rode in an ox cart to the country side.

deənthāan

lāaw deənthāan { māa

paj

bàannòok

He travels to the country side.

.exit

lāaw ottesville { paj

māa

bàannòok

He went (came) out to the country.
M-4

njān, kinkhāw, hàan aahān
khįj si njān paj kin khāw
jūu hàan aahān

khāplôt, aān nānsyû, hîônsámūt
khįj si khāplôt paj aān
nānsyû jūu hîônsámūt

khî lôtmēe, jaam, hŷan
láaw si khî lôtmēe máa
jaam khįj jūu hŷan khįj

lēn, cêŋ tamlûat, komtamlûat
láaw si lēn paj cêŋ
tamlûat jūu komtamlûat

walk, eat, restaurant
I'll walk over to the
restaurant and eat.

drive, read, library
I'll drive over to library
and read.

ride on a bus, visit, house
He will ride on a bus over
to my house to visit me.

run, report to the police,
police station
He will run over to report
to the police at the police
station.

M-5

khāp lôt
láaw si khāp lôt paj sāj?

lēn
láaw si lēn paj sāj?

drive
Where is he driving to?

run
Where is he running to?
C-1
(nám)
A. càw si paj nám njăn? How are you going?
(lôt méé)
B. khøj si paj nám lôt méé I'm going by bus.
C-2
(nếswdaj)
A. lâaw si paj nếswdaj? How will she go?
(njān)
B. lâaw si njān paj She will walk.
C-3
(sǎj)
A. càw si deénthään paj sǎj? Where are you travelling to?
(bàannŏok)
B. khøj si deénthään paj I'm travelling to the country side. bàannŏok
NOTES

1) \textit{paj} and \textit{māa} may occur as the Main Verb in the sentence indicating motion in a particular direction (\textit{māa} 'toward the speaker; \textit{paj}, 'away from the speaker'): 

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{māa hàanaahān} \quad 'to come to the restaurant'
\item \textit{paj kin khāw} \quad 'to go eat'
\end{itemize}

\textit{paj} and \textit{māa} also occur as secondary verbs indicating direction of motion after VP indicating type of locomotion (\textit{njàan} 'to walk', \textit{kháp lōt} 'to drive', etc.); in fact, if any actual travel is indicated either \textit{paj} or \textit{māa} must follow VP of this kind:

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{kháp lōt paj} \quad 'to drive (some place)'
\item \textit{khịh hýa māa} \quad 'to come (some place) by boat'
\item \textit{njàan paj kin khāw} \quad 'to walk (some place) to eat'
\item \textit{kháp lōt paj kin khāw juu hàanaahān} \quad 'to drive to the restaurant to eat'
\end{itemize}

2) Although \textit{paj nám njān} and \textit{paj nēsw daj} both mean 'How are (you) going?', there is a little difference in meaning between them. \textit{Paj nám njān} suggests that you are going on some sort of vehicle; whereas, \textit{paj nēsw daj} is simply a request as to how you are going from one place to another. The following exchange will illustrate this difference:

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{Q:} \textit{càw paj nám njān?} \quad 'How are you going?'
\item \textbf{A:} \textit{khįj sī bōj paj nám njān} \quad 'I'm not going in any kind of vehicle. I'm going to walk.'
\end{itemize}
APPLICATION

1. Add paj or máa and rearrange the following sentence parts into sentences:

(a) khì hìa, hìoŋ sâmút, aān nāŋsìŋ
(b) hàan aahìan, njàāŋ, kin khàw
(c) pàthèet cìn, deènthàāŋ
(d) sàj, khì kìan
(e) jaam phìyan, khàp lòt, hìyan
(f) bāannòok, 3èk
(g) hòonhìan, lènn
(h) jùu nàj mnàŋ, lìn, njàāŋ
(i) pàsùm, khì lòtmèe, jùu hòonhìan
(j) jùu sàj, sōŋ thòorâlèek
(k) sì, njàāŋ, phùn
(l) mnàŋ wìàncan, deènthàāŋ

Answers: Either paj or máa may be used. khòj, càw, làaw, etc. may be used as the subject. (a) khòj khì hìa paj aān nāŋsìŋ jùu hìoŋ sâmút (b) làaw njàāŋ máa kin khàw jùu hàan aahìan (c) càw si deènthàāŋ paj pàthèet cìn bog (d) làaw si khì kìan paj sàj (e) khòj si khàp lòt máa jaam phìyan khòj jùu hìyan làaw (f) khòj si 3èk paj bāannòok (g) làaw lènn paj hòonhìan (h) làaw njàāŋ paj lìn jùu nàj mnàŋ (i) làaw khì lòtmèe paj pàsùm jùu hòonhìan (j) càw si paj sōŋ thòorâlèek jùu sàj (k) làaw si njàāŋ paj phùn (l) khòj si deènthàāŋ paj mnàŋ wìàncan
CYCLE 36

M-1

tiâwlak

càw si tiâwlak dàj boo?

Will you be able to work?

tiânl paj

càw si tiânl paj dàj boo?

walk

Will you be able to walk?

vû

càw si vû dàj boo?

buy

Will you be able to buy (it)?

nûn

càw si nûn dàj boo?

sleep

Will you be able to sleep?

thåam

càw si thåam dàj boo?

ask, question

Will you be able to ask?

njîn

càw si njîn dàj boo?

shoot

Will you be able to shoot?

tõop

càw si tõop dàj boo?

answer

Will you be able to answer?

M-2

dât

càn, be able

dât

Yes, (I will be able to...)

bûn

no

bûn dât

No, (I will not be able to...)
C-1

(hɛtwlak)

A. cȃw sị hɛtwlak dȃj bọc? Will you be able to work?

(dȃj)

B. dȃj Yes.

C-2

(njĩn)

A. cȃw sị njĩn dȃj bọc? Will you be able to shoot?

(bɔr̥)

B. bɔr̥ dȃj No.
NOTES

1) ðà jub means 'to be able, possible', and it normally occurs as VP (Predicate) with a Sentence as NP (Subject).

```
       S
       |
      S----VP
        |
       NP----VP
            |
           Prev----V
              |
          kĥj sj s̄ŷj dàj
          (I will buy be able)

'I will be able to buy it.'
```

2) Negation of this type of sentence is Sentence + bûû dâj: kĥj paj bûû dâj 'I can't go.'

The question form is Sentence + dàj + bûû? 'Can you...?'

The affirmative response is: dàj 'Yes, I can.'

The negative response is: bûû dàj 'No, I can't.'
APPLICATION

1. Change the following questions into 'possibility' situations:
   (a) càw si khǎj pàtuu nìi phìi boo?
   (b) càw si át pòøn-jìam nìi phìi boo?
   (c) càw si sàj kàços lìnsàk nìi phìi boo?
   (d) càw si khǎj kàços hìip nìi phìi boo?
   (e) càw si lòŋ khàndaj nìi phìi boo?

2. Change the following statements into statements indicating one's inability to do something.
   (a) khɔj si khàj pàtuu nàn phùn
   (b) khɔj si pìn jàan nàn phùn
   (c) khɔj si paj hàa phùn nàn phùn
   (d) khɔj si sùjìŋɑ phùn nàn phùn
   (e) khɔj si tìt-tìo kàp phùn nàn phùn

3. Respond affirmatively to the questions in 1 above.
4. Give negative responses to the questions in 1 above.

Answers: 1 change boo to dàj bɔɔ 2 Add bɔɔ dàj to the sentence. 
3 the response to all questions is dàj 4 the response to all questions is bɔɔ dàj.
CYCLE 37

M-1

kháp lōt

càw kháp lōt pen boo? drive

njín pyyn

càw njín pyyn pen boo? Do you know how to drive?

peēŋ lōt

càw peēŋ lōt pen boo? shoot a gun

wàw pháasāa ānkīt

càw wàw pháasāa ānkīt fix a car
pen boo? Do you know how to shoot a gun?

thāaj hùup

càw thāaj hùup pen boo? Do you know how to fix a car?

dō nāo take picture

càw dō nāo pen boo? Do you know how to take picture?

M-2

pen be

pen Yes, (I know how to...)

bōo no

bōo pen No, (I don't know how to...)
C-1
(kháp l组织开展 drive
A. c̀aw kháp l组织开展 pen bôc? Do you know how to drive?
B. pen Yes, I do.

C-2
( الأوسط组织开展 fix a car)
A. c̀aw الأوسط组织开展 l组织开展 pen bôc? Do you know how to fix a car?
B.はずです No, I don't.
NOTES

1) Compare $S + \text{jàj}$ constructions with $S + \text{pen}$ constructions

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{S} \\
\text{NP} \\
\text{VP} \\
\text{Q}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{càw} \\
\text{kháp} \\
\text{lõt}
\end{array}
\]

(you drive car know how Q)

'Do you know how to drive?'

The $S + \text{jàj}$ and $S + \text{pen}$ structure are identical; the difference arises from the difference in meaning between \text{pen} 'to know how to perform some activity' and \text{jàj} 'to be able to do something'.

2) The affirmative response to $S + \text{pen boo}$ is \text{pen}. The negative response is \text{boo pen}. $S + \text{pen}$ constructions are negated by putting \text{boo} before \text{pen}.

3) \text{jàj} and \text{pen} may be combined with questions as in these examples:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{láaw hêt njăn pen} \\
\text{càw sỳy njăn jáj}
\end{array}
\]

'What does he know how to do?'

'What can you buy?'
APPLICATION

1. láaw pseen löt bọọ pen. This sentence indicates that (a) he doesn’t have any tools (b) he doesn’t know how to fix cars (c) he doesn’t want to fix the car (d) he doesn’t have a car.

2. If someone said, khọj kháp löt bọọ dàj, this might indicate that (a) he doesn’t feel like driving (b) he has his right leg in a cast (c) he forgot his driver’s license (d) he is ill.

3. In the sentence láaw thàaj hùup bọọ pen, the subject of the sentence is (a) láaw (b) thàaj hùup (c) láaw thàaj hùup (d) láaw thàaj.

4. Which of the sentences below means ‘I don’t know how to shoot a gun’? (a) khọj njín pyyn pen (b) khọj bọọ njín pyyn pen (c) khọj njín pyyn bọọ pen (d) khọj njín pyyn pen bọọ.

5. Change the following sentences to the negative: (a) càw pseen löt pen bọọ? (b) khọj waw phàasαa anktit pen.

6. Answer this question affirmatively: càw pseen löt pen bọọ?

7. Answer this question negatively: càw thàaj hùup pen bọọ?

Answers: 1b, 2b, c, or d, 3c, 4c, 5(a)càw pseen löt bọọ pen bọọ? (b)khọj waw phàasαa anktit bọọ pen 6pen 7bọọ pen.
CYCLE 38

M-1

tiicák
lāaw tiicák dāj bōo? to type
Can she type?
sāk hùup
tō take pictures
lāaw sāk hùup dāj bōo?
Can she take pictures?
sỳy khōṇ
tō shop
lāaw sỳy khōṇ dāj bōo?
Can he shop?
tät phōm
tō cut hair
lāaw tät phōm dāj bōo?
Can she cut hair?
pūk hỳan
tō build a house
lāaw pūk hỳan dāj bōo?
Can she build a house?
khūakin
tō cook
lāaw khūakin dāj bōo?
Can she cook?

M-2

khūakin
bōt dāj, phōwāa lāaw khūakin No, because she doesn't know how to cook.
bōt pen

pūk hỳan build a house
bōt dāj, phōwāa lāaw pūk
No, because he doesn't know how to build a house.
hỳan bōt pen
tát phôm

bytes dàj, phwäa lâaw tát phôm bọ pen

cut the hair

No, because he doesn't know how to cut hair.

sìy khọn

bytes dàj, phwäa lâaw sìy khọn bọ pen

to shop

No, because he doesn't know how to shop.

săk hùup

bytes dàj, phwäa lâaw săk hùup bọ pen

take a picture

No, because he doesn't know how to take a picture.

tiicák

bytes dàj, phwäa lâaw tii cák bọ pen

type

No, because he doesn't know how to type.

C-1

(khúakin)

A. lâaw khúakin dàj bọo?

Can he cook?

(bọo)

B. bọo dàj, phwäa lâaw khúakin bọ pen

No, because he doesn't know how to cook.
C-2
(njăŋ)
A. láaw hêt njăŋ pen? What does he know how to do?
(pūk hyăn)
B. láaw pūk hyăn pen He knows how to build the house.

**NOTES**

1) phɔwã́a 'because' is a sentence connective. The sentence that follows phɔwã́a stands in causal relationship to the one that precedes it.

Sentence 1: láaw khúakin bɔɔ dàj
Sentence 2: láaw khúakin bɔɔ pen
S 1 + S 2: láaw khúakin bɔɔ dàj phɔwã́a (láaw khúakin) bɔɔ pen
   'She can't cook because she doesn't know how (to cook).'

2) The difference in meaning between S + dàj 'to be in a position or situation to do something' and S + pen 'to know how to do something' may be illustrated in sentences like this one:
   (láaw sâk hûup) bɔɔ dàj phɔwã́a láaw sâk hûup bɔɔ pen
   'He is unable to (take a picture) because he doesn't know how to take a picture!'

However, there are situations in which pen and dàj may be interchanged, as follows:
   càw wàw pháasña ankît bɔɔ pen / dàj  'You can't speak English.'
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences:
   (a) บ悛 ด้าจ, arehouse ล้าว ต้าต พอ้ด มั้้น ส่วนที่
   (b) บ悛 แก้ไข, arehouse ล้าว รัก หัวรู บ悛 ป็น.

2. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:
   (a) ขอ ซิ่ง ป้าย อีก ที่ ที่เพิ่ม ช่องที่ บ悛 มี อีก
   (b) ขอ ซิ่ง น้ำ ป้าย ช่องที่ ขอ ซิ่ง อีก บ悛 ป็น
   (c) ขอ ซิ่ง ซื่อ น้ำ ป้าย ช่องที่ ขอ ซิ่ง น้ำ ป้าย บ悛 ด้าจ

3. Fill in the blanks with ปน หรือ ด้าจ ตามที่กำหนด. ถ้าเป็นไปได้
   ให้ใส่ทั้งสอง.
   (a) ขอ ซิ่ง ป้าย อีก บ悛 ส่วนที่
   (b) ล้าว น้ำ ป้าย ป้าน
   (c) ล้าว พัด น้ำ ป้าน
   (d) ว่า รัก หัวรู ป้าน
   (e) ล้าว ติก ค่า บ悛

Answers: 1(a) บ悛 ปน (b) ด้าจ 2a, b และ c: 万亩 3(a) ด้าจ (b) ด้าจ (c) ด้าจ/ปน (d) ด้าจ/ปน (e) ด้าจ/ปน
CYCLE 39

M-1

sỳy

cày sỳy mà mà cák too?  How many horses did you buy?

hển

cày hển mà mà cák too?  How many horses did you see?

mí

cày mí mà mà cák too?  How many horses do you have?

khǎaj

cày khǎaj mà mà cák too?  How many horses did you sell?

dàj

cày dàj mà mà cák too?  How many horses did you get?

lłaŋ

cày lłaŋ mà mà cák too?  How many horses did you raise?

M-2

pỳm

khįj hěn pỳm sónico hǔa  I see two books.

saànmàj

khįj hěn saànmàj sónica khón  I see two carpenters.

mǎa

khįj hěn mǎa sónico too.  I see two dogs.
mâak klang  orange

khøj hën mâak klang sŏn nūaj  I see two oranges.

paa  fish

khøj hën paa sŏn too  I see two fish.

hùup  picture

khøj hën hùup sŏn phêñ  I see two pictures.

nën, kîip  money, kip

khøj hën nën sŏn kîip  I see two kips.

C-1
(paa, too)

A. càw sỳy paa cák too  How many fish did you buy?
(sǎam)

B. sǎam too.  Three.

C-2
(hën)

A. càw hën njăñ?  What do you see?
(m màa)

B. khøj hën màa.  I see some dogs.
(cák too)

A. càw hën màa cák too?  How many dogs do you see?
(së)  Four.

B. së too
NOTES

1) When dàj is the Main Verb in a Sentence and is followed by NP (object), it has the meaning 'to get, earn, procure'.

khơj dàj pỳm 2 hàa 'I procured 2 books.'

2) lìaŋ means 'to look after, raise'. It may occur only with animate NP as objects.

lìaŋ lùuk 'to raise' or 'to take care of children'
lìaŋ màa 'to raise horses'
lìaŋ sàt 'to raise animals'

3) sàaŋ means 'artisan, skilled craftsman'. màj means 'wood'. sàaŋ màj is used to refer to a 'person who is skilled in working with wood', hence it includes carpenters, cabinet makers, coffin makers, etc.

NO APPLICATION PHASE

173
CYCLE 40

M-1

tó

tó nüaj nìi

sát

sát too nìi

pỳm

pỳm húa nìi

hýan

hýan lán nìi

lọt

lọt khán nìi

náaj phásaāa

náaj phásaāa phūu nìi

màā

màā too nìi

M-2

tó nüaj nìi láakhāā hâa

họoj kīip

kōon thàaj hùup nüaj nìi

láakhāā hâa họoj kīip

This table

This animal

This book

This house

This car

This interpreter

This horse

This table costs 500 kips.

This camera costs 500 kips.
fâj sâaj an nî lâakhâa ē a hoôj kîip

móon nüaj nî lâakhâa ē a hoôj kîip

pyyn kâbûok nî lâakhâa ē a hoôj kîip

sîa phîyn nî lâakhâa ē a hoôj kîip

muak baj nî lâakhâa ē a hoôj kîip

This flashlight costs 500 kips.

This watch costs 500 kips.

This gun costs 500 kips.

This shirt costs 500 kips.

This hat costs 500 kips.

M-3

wâentaa khûu nî

wâentaa khûu nî lâakhâa thâwdaj?

this pair of glasses

How much does this pair of glasses cost?

thônthaw khûu nî

thônthaw khûu nî lâakhâa thâwdaj?

this pair of socks

How much does this pair of socks cost?

jaasûup sîon nî

jaasûup sîon nî lâakhâa thâwdaj?

this pack of cigarettes

How much does this pack of cigarettes cost?

kâp fâj kâp nî

kâp fâj kâp nî lâakhâa thâwdaj?

this box of matches

How much does this box of matches cost?
mìt duan nìi
  mìt duan nìi lāakháa thǎwdaj?
  this knife
  How much does this knife cost?

kápaw nūaj nìi
  kápaw nūaj nìi lāakháa thǎwdaj?
  this briefcase
  How much does this briefcase cost?

M-4

pỳm, hũa
  pỳm nìi càw khǎaj hũa lǎō cák k filmpjes
  book (classifier)
  How many kips do these books cost apiece?

sǐn, kiilóo
  sǐn nìi càw khǎaj kiilóo lǎō cák k filmpjes
  meat, kilo
  How many kips does this meat cost per kilo?

kǎpuu, too
  kǎpuu nìi càw khǎaj too lǎō cák k filmes?
  crab (classifier)
  How many kips do these crabs cost each?

mǎaklën, nūaj
  mǎaklën nìi càw khǎaj nūaj lǎō cák k filmes
  tomato (classifier)
  How many kips do these tomatoes cost apiece?

mōon, nūaj
  mōon nìi càw khǎaj nūaj lǎō cák k filmes?
  watch, clock (classifier)
  How many kips do these watches cost apiece?
M-5

hâasîp kîip
hûa lâh hâasîp kîip
fifty kips

săam lôôj săaw kîip
kiilôo lâh săam lôôj săaw
kîip
320 kips

sîpçêt sên
too lâh sîpçêt sên
seventeen cents

sáawpêst kîip
nûaj lâh sáawpêst kîip
twenty-eight kips

M-6

aw
take

ee, aw săa!
0.K., take it!

ee, paj săa!
0.K., go ahead!

aw hâj
give

ee, aw hâj lâaw săa
0.K. give it to him!

ee, kin săa!
0.K. eat it!

C-1

(pyyn kâbîok nîi)

A. pyyn kâbîok nîi lâakhâa
thâwdaj?

B. sîpsînh phán kîip

How much is this gun?
Twelve thousand kips.

177
C-2

A. an nì mēn njiang?
(mlit)
B. an nì mēn mlit
(mlit duaj nì)
A. mlit duaj nì laakhāa thдвdaj?
(sĭ sip hâa kîip)
B. sĭ sip hâa kîip

What's this?

It's a knife.

How much is this knife?

Forty-five kips.

C-3

A. kâj nì laakhāa too lâ? thдвdaj?
B. too lâ? hâa hоoj sāamsip kîip

How much do these chickens cost apiece?

They are 530 kips each.

C-4

A. sîin nì cày khăaj kiilōo lâ? cāk kîip?
B. kiilōo lâ? sōn lоoj pêt sĭp kîip
A. sōn lоojcêtsîp dăj bōo?
B. bōo, bōo dăj. aw sōn lоoj cêtsîp hâa kîip săa

How many kips does this meat cost per kilo?

It's 280 kips per kilo.

Can you make it 270 kips?

No, I can't. Take it for 275 kips.
A. አወ ከአን ከእን ልወ ሕ ሓጇ ከእን እ ከእን ከወ ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከእን ከወ ከእን ከ엘 ከእን ከ-six 244
duan  'something round'
mìt  'knife'

kábok  'barrel'
pëyn  'gun'
khûu  'objects in pairs'
wëntaa  'eye glasses'
thõnthaw  'socks'
hyan  'house'

With mass nouns (sìin 'meat', nàam 'water, etc.') metric rather than unit classifiers are used:

**Metric Classifier**  **Noun**

kìllòo (either 1000 meters or 1000 grams)  sìin  'meat'

káp  'small box'
káp fáj  'matches'

sòón  'small package'
jaasûup  'cigarettes'

kìip  'kip (Laotian unit of currency)

2) When asking or giving the price of something láakháa is used in a verbless sentence:

![Tree diagram]

S

NP  N  NP (quantity)

tôñnaaj nìi  láakháa  hàa hòoj kìip

(This table) (price) (500 kip)

'This table costs 500 kips.'

In the question NP (quantity) is replaced by tháwdaj. mìt duan nìi láakháa tháwdaj  'How much is this knife?'
APPLICATION

1) Fill in the blanks using English as a guide:

(a) kâpuu ____________ 'these crabs'
(b) sîn ______________ 'this meat'
(c) wàntaa ______________ 'this pair of glasses'
(d) mâa ________________ 'this horse'
(e) kòon thàaj hûup ______________ 'this camera'
(f) móon ________________ 'these watches'
(g) __________ nûaj nîi 'this briefcase, bag'
(h) mâaklën ______________ 'these tomatoes'
(i) mâaklën ______________ 'this tomato'
(j) kiilóo _____________ 320 kîip '320 kips per kilo'
(k) ______________ lâ° 4000 kîip '4000 kip each (watches)'
(l) ______________ lâ° 15 kîip '15 kip apiece (books)'
(m) kaj nîi ____________ cák kîip 'how much apiece?'
(n) baj lâ° 30 ________________ '30 kip apiece'
(o) màit duan nîi ______________ 'What's the price of this knife?'

Answers: 1(a)nîi (b)nîi (c)khûu nîi (d)toò nîi (e)nûaj nîi (f)nîi (g)kâpaw (h)nîi (i)nûaj nîi (j)lâ° (k)nûaj (l)hûa (m)toò lâ° (n)kîip (o)láakhâa thàwdaj?
CYCLE 41

M-1

sỳy njàn boó?
láaw sỳy njàn boó?
paj sàj boó?
láaw paj sàj boó?
paj nám phàj boó?
láaw sì paj nám phàj boó?
phàk jùu hòonhèm daj boó?
láaw sì phàk jùu hòonhèm daj boó?

buy anything
Did he buy anything?
go anywhere
Did he go anywhere?
going with anybody
Is he going with anybody?
to stay in any hotel
Is he going to stay in any hotel at all?

M-2

sỳy, láaw sì sỳy kàj too nỳŋ
paj, láaw sì paj hàa mño
paj, láaw sì paj nám àaj láaw
phàk, láaw sì phàk jùu hòonhèm màŋ

Yes, he will buy one chicken.
Yes, he is going to see the doctor.
Yes, he is going with his older brother.
Yes, he will stay in a new hotel at all?
mâak ṃaŋ, ṇuaj

càw si ṣyy mâak ṃaŋ
cák ṇuaj boo?
mâak kùaj, ṇuaj

càw si ṣyy mâak kùaj
cák ṇuaj boo?
phák, ṃat

càw si ṣyy phák câk
ṃat boo?
mâak phét, hôô

càw si ṣyy mâak phét câk
hôô boo?
nâm paa, kèew

càw si ṣyy nâm paa câk
kèew boo?

mâak ṃaŋ, ṇuaj

càw si ṣyy mâak ṃaŋ
cák ṇuaj boo?
mâak kùaj, ṇuaj

càw si ṣyy mâak kùaj
cák ṇuaj boo?
phák, ṃat

càw si ṣyy phák câk
ṃat boo?
nâm paa, kèew

càw si ṣyy nâm paa câk
kèew boo?

mâak ṃaŋ, ṇuaj

càw si ṣyy mâak ṃaŋ
cák ṇuaj boo?
mâak kùaj, ṇuaj

càw si ṣyy mâak kùaj
cák ṇuaj boo?

M-4

khếj si bôô ṣyy pỳm câk ḥa
khếj si bôô ṣyy kǎj câk too
khếj si bôô ṣyy mâak kùaj
cák ṇuaj
khếj si bôô ṣoon câk kʰon

I'm not going to buy any books.
I'm not going to buy any chickens.
I'm not going to buy any bananas.
I'm not going to teach anybody.
M-5

khôj bôp paj sáj

I didn't go anywhere.

sýy

khôj bôp sýy njàn

buy

nám

khôj bôp paj nám phàj

I didn't buy anything.

mí, nèn

khôj bôp mí nèn câk kîp

with

hùucák

khôj bôp hùucák câk khôn

I didn't go with anybody.

khôj bôp hùucák phûm daj

mì, nèn

khôj bôp mì nèn câk kîp

I have no kips. (I don't have any kips.)

hùucák

khôj bôp hùucák câk khôn

know

khôj bôp hùucák phûm daj

I do not know anybody. (in that group).

I don't know anybody at all.

C-1

A. càw si sỳy njàn bôc?

Will you buy anything?

B. sỳy, khôj si sỳy pûm sêcj hûa

Yes, I will buy two books.

C-2

A. càw si sỳy pàa câk too bôc?

Are you going to buy any fish?

B. bôp, khôj si bôp sỳy pàa câk too.

No, I'm not going to buy any fish.
C-3

A. càw si paj nám phàj bòo?
   Are you going with anybody?

B. bòo, khâaj si bòo paj nám phàj?
   No, I'm not going with anybody.

NOTES

1) màak means 'fruit of a tree or plant' and is the first element in many Noun Compounds referring to fruits and vegetables, màak mûn 'mango', màak kwàaj 'banana', màak klàm 'orange', màak phét 'hot peppers'. The general word for fruit is màakmı́j, however, màak does occur with this meaning in tònmaaj nî bòo pen màak 'This tree has no fruit on it'.

2) màt means literally 'to tie up'. It is used to mean 'bunch, or bundle' of vegetables, etc.

3) nhạ 'to wrap up' is used to refer to 'packages, packets, etc.' or things that are wrapped in paper. It does not refer to boxes.

4) kèaw means 'glass as a material'. It is also used to refer to 'glass bottles'. The word for a 'glass to drink out of' is còok. Còok kèaw is a 'glass drinking glass'.

5) nhạ̀n, sǎj, and phàj usually function as question words in sentences:
   càw paj sǎj?
   'Where are you going?'

   lâaw si khàaj nhạ̀n?
   'What is he going to sell?'

   càw si dèenthalâàn nám phàj?
   'Who are you going to travel with?'
But in negative sentences or in questions with bọ, they function as indefinite nouns:

lása sy ɲâh bọ?
'Did he buy anything?'
lása paj sâj bọ?
'Did he go anywhere?'
câw bọ paj nâm phój bọ?
'You didn't go with anybody?'

cák 'How many?' functions as a question word in

câw mì pỳm cák hũa?
'How many books do you have?'

but in the negative sentence khâj bọ mì cák hũa 'I don't have a single one (book)', cák means 'any' or 'a single one'. daj 'any' has a similar meaning in the affirmative question.

lása sì phâk jwu hóőphém daj bọ?
'Is he going to stay in any hotel at all?'

bọ, lása sì bọ phâk jwu hóőphém daj

'No, he isn't going to stay in any hotel.'

cák and daj are both used in the negative for emphasis. In cases where either cák and/or daj can be used daj is usually more general in meaning. Compare:

khâj bọ hàucák cák khôn
'I don't know anybody in this group.'

khâj bọ hàucák phój daj
'I don't know anybody in this town.'
APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentence into Lao: (Write the answers on a separate piece of paper or say them aloud and check your answers).

(a) What do you see? I don't see anything.
(b) Where did your friend go? He didn't go anywhere.
(c) Do you have any money? No, I don't have a single kip.
(d) Do you know anybody in Vientiane? No, I don't know a soul there.

Answers: 1(a)càw hến njiang? khaj bàj bàj njiang (b)phyan càw paj sàj? lāaw bàj paj sàj (c)càw mìi nèn bọo? bàj, khaj bàj mìi nèn cák kîip (d)càw húucák phrû daj jîu wîancan bọo? bàj, khaj bàj húucák phrû daj jîu hàn cák khôn
CYCLE 42

M-1

hùucák káp láaw to know her
phǎj phǎj koo jàak
hùucák káp láaw
Everybody wants to know her.
paj bèn to go see
phǎj phǎj koo jàak paj bèn
Everybody wants to go see.
sǐim to taste
phǎj phǎj koo jàak sǐim
Everybody wants to taste.
sỳy to buy
phǎj phǎj koo jàak sỳy
Everybody wants to buy.
khì to ride
phǎj phǎj koo jàak khì
Everybody wants to ride.
āan to read
phǎj phǎj koo jàak āan
Everybody wants to read.

M-2

láaw, náam she, pretty
láaw náam láaj She is very pretty.
sǐìnée, muan the film, good
sǐìnée muan láaj The film is very good.
(enjoyable)

aahǎn sèesp the food, delicious
aahǎn sèesp láaj The food is very delicious.

188
M-2

khọơŋ thâyık
   khọơŋ thâyık lảaj

lọt, máj
   lọt máj lảaj

pảṃ nị nảa sǒncaj
   pảṃ nị nảa sǒncaj lảaj

things, cheap

   Things are very cheap.

the car, new

   The car is very new.

this book, interesting

   This book is very interesting.

C-1

(náam)

A. láaw náam boo?
   (hùucák káp láaw)

B. oo, láaw náam lảaj
   phǎaj phǎaj koo jàak
   hùucák káp láaw

(pretty)

   Is she pretty?

   (to know her)

   Oh yes, she is very pretty.

   Everybody wants to know her.

C-2

(hùucák káp láaw)

A. pen njàŋ phǎaj phǎaj koo
   cỳŋ jàak hùucák káp
   láaw.

(hùucák káp láaw, náam)

B. phǎaj phǎaj koo jàak
   hùucák káp láaw phọwàa
   láaw náam lảaj

(to know her)

   Why does everybody want to
   know her?

(to know her, pretty)

   Everybody wants to know her
   because she is very pretty.
NOTES

1) Doubling of phạj 'who, anyone' gives it the general and all inclusive meaning 'everybody'. It is normally followed by koo, which in this case can not be translated.

2) jâak 'want, would like' is normally followed by VP: lâaw jâak paj bən sîinée 'He wants to go to a movie.' jâak should not be confused with māk 'like to': lâaw māk paj bən sîinée 'He likes to go to movies.'

3) lâaj 'very' is an intensifier when it occurs after stative verbs like nāam 'pretty', etc.

4) mūan 'to be enjoyable, to be fun' may have only inanimate NP or VP as Subject:

   pen thāhăn mūan boo?    'Is it fun being a soldier?'

   sîinée mūan boo?    'Did you enjoy the movie?'

5) The construction pen njân... cyn 'Why (how is it that...)' occurs initially in the sentence:

   pen njân lâaw cyn jâak paj pācam jau pátèet lâaw?    'Why (how is it that...) does he want to be stationed in Laos?'

6) nāasôncaj 'interesting' functions like a stative verb, but it is a compound made up of nāa 'to be able' or 'ing' + sôncaj 'to be interested in'. nāa may occur before other verbs with a similar function: nāakin 'look good to eat', nāajûm 'nice to live in', etc.
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) ______________ kɔɔ hùu lèsw
(Everybody already knows that.)

(b) ______________ láaw ______ bɔɔ pɔj bɔŋ sìínèé
(Why didn't he go to the movies?)

(c) mìa láaw ______ náam ________
(His wife isn't very pretty.)

(d) hìn phàasɔa ______________ bɔɔ?
(Is studying a language fun?)

(e) lɔt càw ________ bɔɔ?
(Is your car new?)

(f) aahɔan láaw ______________ bɔɔ?
(Is Lao food delicious?)

(g) láaw ______________ lɔaj bɔɔ?
(Is she very short in height?)

(h) khɔj bɔɔ jàak ______________
(I don't want to be fat.)

(i) khɔj bɔɔ ______________ khɔn cɔɔj
(I don't like skinny people.)

(j) jùù bàan nòɔk ______________
(It's no fun living out in the provinces.)
(k) ________ cāw ________ thían phàasā laāw?
   (How do you happen to be studying Lao?)

(1) ____________________________ mūn lāaj
   (Flying (going by plane) is a lot of fun.)

(m) ____________________________ bō māk khāp lot
   (Nobody likes to drive a car.)

(n) pỳm hūa nàn __________________________
   (That book isn't very interesting.)

Answers: (a) phāj phāj kōo (b) pen njāŋ... cỳŋ (c) bō... paandaj (d) mūn (e) māj (f) sèēp (g) tām (h) tūj (i) māk (j) bō mūn (k) pen njāŋ... cỳŋ (1) paj nām hỳabin (m) phāj phāj kōo (n) bō bānāsāncaj paandaj
CYCLE 43

M-1

hën nâa láaw

phљ phљ koo bọo jâak
hën nâa láaw
to see her face

pen phjan láaw
to be his friend

phљ phљ koo bọo jâak
pen phjan láaw
No one wants to see her face.
No one wants to be his friend.

njunkenaw
to be concerned

phљ phљ koo bọo jâak
njunkenaw
No one wants to be concerned.

juu
to live (in it)

phљ phљ koo bọo jâak juu
No one wants to live (in it)

thiaw thaan sên nli
to take this road

phљ phљ koo bọo jâak
thiaw thaan sên nii
No one wants to take this road.

saj hoon nli
to use this room

phљ phљ koo bọo jâak
saj hoon nli
No one wants to use this room.
M-2

bọ̄́ sămphàap

láaw bọ̄́ sămphàap ləaj

impolite

He is very impolite.

khôn khīī thīī

láaw pen khôn khīī thīī ləaj

stingy person

He is a very stingy person.

bọ̄́ sàmkhán paandaŋ

lỳān nī bọ̄́ sàmkhán paandaŋ

not so important

This matter is not so important.

nə̄j

hỳān làn nī nə̄j ləaj

small

This house is very small.

kandaan

thàng sèn nī kandaan ləaj

dangerous

This road is very dangerous.

C-1

(bọ̄́ sămphàap)

(impolite)

A. láaw bọ̄́ sămphàap, mən bọ̄?

He is impolite, isn't he?

(hèn nàá láaw)

(to see his face)

B. mən lès, láaw bọ̄́ sămphàap ləaj phēj phēj koo bọ̄̄ jàak hỳn nàá láaw.

Yes, he is very impolite. No one wants to see his face.
(jāak hēn nāa láaw)  (want to see his face)
A. pen njāŋ phāj phāj kōo
cyn bōn jāak hēn nāa
láaw?

(bōn sūphàap) láaw, bōn
sūphàap)  (impolite)
B. phāj phāj kōo bōn jāak
hēn nāa láaw phōwān
láaw bōn sūphàap lāaj.

1. ท่านจะอยู่คนใดเป็นผู้ดีอยู่ตลอดเวลา และจะมีผู้ช่วยดูแลมั้ยหรือจ้างใครเข้าใจให้.
มาไม่ตอบจะต้องมีการคิดว่าถูกต้องหรือไม่.

2. ใครจะช่วยดูแลและรักษาคนจ้างอยู่.

3. จานที่จ้างทำช่วยอยู่ตลอด และไหนทะเลาะด้วยอยู่เสมอ.

4. ใดก็ตามอยู่ต้องดูแลคนจ้างให้.

195
CYCLE 44

M-1

 naïam kwāa  prettier than
 hýan lăn nli naïam kwāa  This house is prettier than
 lăn năn  that one.

 kwāaŋ kwāa  more spacious than
 hýan lăn nli kwāaŋ kwāa  This house is more spacious
 lăn năn  than that one.

 khèëp kwāa  less space than
 hýan lăn nli khèëp kwāa  This house has less space
 lăn năn  than that one.

 thëyyk kwāa  cheaper than
 hýan lăn nli thëyyk kwāa  This house is cheaper than
 lăn năn  that one.

 phëen kwāa  more expensive than
 hýan lăn nli phëen kwāa  This house is more expensive
 lăn năn  than that one.

 sünŋ kwāa  higher than
 hýan lăn nli sünŋ kwāa  This house is higher than
 lăn năn  that one.
M-2

เล่น ว่าจ

ล้อ ขนนิ่น เล่น ว่าจ
thaw kan kap khàn nàn

ลาakháa

ล้อ ขนนิ่น ลาakhiráa thaw
kan kap khàn nàn

นี่จ ทะด
njjáj thudd

ล้อ ขนนิ่น นี่จ ทะด
kan kap khàn nàn

มี่จ ทะด
maj thudd

ล้อ ขนนิ่น มี่จ ทะด
kan kap khàn nàn

run fast

This car runs as fast as that one.

This car has the same price as that one.

This car is as big as that one.

This car is as new as that one.

C-1

(นี่จ กว่า)

A. ห่าง ขนนิ่น นี่จ กว่า
làn nàn màp thù
thù?

(bigger than)

This house is bigger than that one, isn't it?

(ซื้อ ทะด)

B. ซื้อ ทะด, ห่าง ขนนิ่น นี่จ
thudd kan kap làn

(as big as)

No, this house is as (big)
as that one.
C-2

(lesen wâj) (run fast)

A. lôt khân nîi lesen wâj thêaw kan káp khân nân, mæn bọo?

This car runs as fast as that one, doesn't it?

(lesen wâj kwâa) (run faster than)

B. bọo mæn, lôt khân nîi lesen wâj kwâa khân nân

No, this one runs faster than that one.

NOTES

1) Two things may be equal or unequal as far as some quality (goodness, etc.) is concerned; consequently, there are in language, constructions that may be labeled 'Comparison of Equality' and 'Comparison of Inequality'.

(a) The Comparison of Inequality construction in Lao is:

\[ NP^1 + V_s + kwâa + NP^2 \]

hýan lăn nîi pâm kwâa lăn nân

(this house pretty more that one)

'This house is prettier than that one.'
(b) The Comparison of Equality construction is:

\[ \text{NP}^1 + V_s + \text{thāw kan kāp} + \text{NP}^2 \]

\[ \text{lōt khān nī} \quad \text{kāw} \quad \text{thāw kan kāp} \quad \text{khān nān} \]

(This car old equal to that one.)

'This car is as old as that one'.

When the stative verb refers to 'size', thāw may replace thāw in construction like the one above:

\[ \text{lōt khān nī njàj thōo kan kāp khān nān} \]

'This car is as big as that one.'

The stative verb may be replaced by \( V + \text{Adverb} \) (lēn wāj) in either of the constructions above:

\[ \text{lōt khān nī lēn wāj kwaā khān nān} \]

'This car runs faster than that one.'

\[ \text{lōt khān nī lēn wāj thāwkan kāp khān nān} \]

'This car runs as fast as that one.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw __________________ càw bōo?
   (Is she taller than you?)

(b) miā càw __________________ miā láaw
   (Your wife's as pretty as his.)

(c) láaw njàaŋ __________________ càw
   (He walks faster than you do.)
(d) liəŋ nıi ___________________________ liəŋ nån
   (This story is more interesting than that one.)

(e) láaw pen khón ___________________________ caw
   (He's as intelligent a person as you are.)

(f) láaw kháp lót ___________________________ phyan caw
   (He drives faster than your friend.)

(g) khɔj mìi nɛn ___________________________ caw
   (I have more money than you.)

(h) phǎj phǎj kɔo bɔj ___________________________ láaw
   (Nobody is as evil (bad as he is.)

(i) pỳm hǔa nìi ___________________________ hǔa nån
   (This book is as cheap as that one.)

(j) mâak mʊaŋ nʊaj nìi ___________________________ nʊaj nån
   (This mango is as big as that one.)

(k) móŋ nʊaj nìi ___________________________ nʊaj nån
   (This watch is more expensive than that one.)

(l) háasíp kıl p__________
   (50 kip. That's very expensive.)

(m) mỳy nìi làaw khǎaj ___________________________ mỳy wán nìi
   (He is selling it cheaper today than yesterday.)

(n) ___________________________ nån
   (It's much more delicious than that.)

Answers: 
(a)sùuŋ kwɔɔ (b)ŋáam thɔɔ kɔɔn kɔp (c)wɔją kwɔɔ (d)nâa
    sóncaį kwɔɔ (e)sàlâat thɔɔ kɔɔn kɔp (f)waj kwaą (g)lɔaj
    kwɔɔ (h)sùa thɔɔ kɔɔn kɔp (i)láakhɔa thɔɔ kɔɔn kɔp (or)
    thỳyɔ thɔɔ kɔɔn kɔp (j)nɔaj thɔɔ kɔɔn kɔp (k)phèsɔŋ kwɔɔ
    (l)phèsɔŋ láaj (m)thỳy kwaą (n)sèɛp láaj kwɔɔ

200
Cycle 45

M-1

 nåam kwāa muu

 nåj sāam khōn nī lī cāw khīt
 wāa njīn phūudaj nåam kwāa
 muu?

 nāahāk kwāa muu

 nåj sāam khōn nī lī cāw khīt
 wāa njīn phūudaj nāahāk
 kwāa muu?

 khīihāaj kwāa muu

 nåj sāam khōn nī lī cāw khīt
 wāa njīn phūudaj khīihāaj
 kwāa muu?

 hīaphōoj kwāa muu

 nåj sāam khōn nī lī cāw khīt
 wāa njīn phūudaj hīaphōoj
 kwāa muu?

 khīi aaj kwāa muu

 nåj sāam khōn nī lī cāw khīt
 wāa njīn phūudaj khīi aaj
 kwāa muu?

 The prettiest

 Which of these three women do you think is the prettiest?

 The loveliest

 Which of these three women do you think is the loveliest?

 The ugliest

 Which of these three women do you think is the ugliest?

 The best-mannered

 Which of these three women do you think is the best-mannered?

 The most bashful

 Which of these three women do you think is the most bashful?
M-2

ŋáam thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i ŋáam thāw kan
equally pretty
These three women are equally pretty.

kēŋ thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i kēŋ thāw kan
equally smart
These three women are equally smart.

dīi thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i dīi thāw kan
equally nice
These three women are equally nice.

dājhāp kaan sūkṣāa thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i dājhāp kaan sūkṣāa thāw kan
equally educated
These three women have equal education.

mīi aanjū? thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i mīi aanjū? thāw kan
the same age
These three women are the same age.

mīi wīak ĭāaj thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i mīi wīak ĭāaj thāw kan
have equal amount of work
These three women have equal amount of work.

mīi nēndyan thāw kan
n̄jīn sāam khōn n̄i mīi nēndyan thāw kan
have equal salary
These three women have equal salaries.
C-1

(ŋáam kwàa mûu)

A. nást sàam khôn nìi càw
    khit wàa njîn phûudaj
    ŋáam kwàa mûu

(the prettiest)

Of these three women who
do you think is the
prettiest?

(ŋáam thâw kan)

B. khôj khit wàa njîn sàam
    khôn nìi ŋáam thâw kan

(equally pretty)

I think these three women
are equally pretty.

C-2

(ŋáam kwàa mûu)

A. nást sàam khôn nàn míi
    njîn phûu nûn ŋáam
    kwàa mûu, mën bôo?

(the prettiest)

Of these three women there's
one who is the prettiest,
don't you think?

B. bôñ mën, khôj khit wàa
    khácàw ŋáam thâw kan

No, I think they are
equally pretty.

NOTES

1) The construction for Comparison of Inequality when more than
two objects are being compared is:

NP (Number of Objects) + NP (Subject) + Vs kwàa + mûu

nást sàam khôn nîi njîn phûudaj ŋáam kwàa mûu

(of these 3 persons which woman pretty more group)

'Which of these three women is the prettiest?'
mûu 'group' always occurs in this construction. The classifier phûu is used before dâj because it is the classifier for njîn. Observe the following construction with a different classifier:

náj sàam nûaj nîi mûak kùaj nûaj dâj sès p kwàa mûu

'Which of these three bananas is the most delicious?'

2) The construction of Comparison of Equality when three or more objects are being compared is:

NP (Subject) + Vs + thâw kan

njîn sàam khôon nîi sûûn thâw kan

'These three women are equally tall.'

thâw kan 'equal, equally' may also occur after NP:

njîn sàam khôn nîi mîi aajû? thâw kan

(These three women have age equal)

'These three women are the same age.'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) náj sî khôn nîi lûuk phuudaj nàahâk ____________

(Which of the four children is the most loveable?)

(b) náj sâm khôn nîi càw khît wàa njîn phuudaj __________

(Which of these three women do you think is the most bashful?)

(c) pỳm hûk hûa nîi ________________

(These six books are priced the same.)
(d) phũusáaj hâa khôn nìi mìi ología
(These five boys have equal amounts of money.)

(e) sãaŋ máj sõoŋ khôn nìi hêt wiak
(These two carpenters work equally skillfully.)

(f) náj 3 khôn nìi thãhǎan phũudaj kháp lót
(Which of these three soldiers drives the fastest?)

(g) náj 3 khôn nìi nãkhían phũudaj
(Which of these three students is the most studious?)

(h) náj 3 too nìi kǎj tooðaj
(Which is the biggest of these three chickens?)

(i) kẽw sãam nůaj nàm mìi
(Those three bottles have equal amounts of water in them.)

(j) náj 3 khôn nàm sãaŋ phũudaj pián jaŋ dàj
(Of those three artisans which can change a tire the fastest?)

Answers: (a)kwǎm múu (b)khĩiaaj kwǎm múu (c)láakháa thǎw kan
(d)lǎaj thǎw kan (e)kěŋ thǎw kan (f)wǎj kwǎm múu
(g)dụ̀mǎn kwǎm múu (h)njáŋ kwǎm múu (i)nàm thǎw kan
(j)wǎj kwǎm múu
CYCLE 46

M-1

pỳm, hũa

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa pỳm
jùu sọng hũa

book, (classifier)

Now I have two books left.

nén, kíp

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa nén
jùu sọng kíp

money, kíp

Now I have two kips left.

khâw, thọŋ

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa khâw
jùu sọng thọŋ

rice, bag

Now I have two bags of rice left.

paa, too

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa paa
jùu sọng too

fish, (classifier)

Now I have two fish left.

lùukpyyn, lùuk

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa
lùukpyyn jùu sọng lùuk

bullet, (classifier)

Now I have two bullets left.

lābēt myy, lùuk

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa
lābēt myy jùu sọng lùuk

hand grenade, (classifier)

Now I have two hand grenades left.

lāw bìa, kēsw

diawnli khọj njāŋ lỳa lāw
bìa jùu sọng kēsw

beer, bottle

Now I have two bottles of beer left.
pàaj, khâmkhúan, phèen

sign, slogan, sheet (classifier)

Now I have two slogan signs left.

M-2

nèn, dooláa

càw nján lèa nèn jıu cák
dooláa?
money, dollar

How many dollars do you have left?

thôń, nūaj

càw nján lèa thôń jıu cák
nūaj?
sack,(classifier)

How many sacks do you have left?

mâak kùaj, nūaj

càw nján lèa mâak kùaj
jıu cák nūaj?
banana,(classifier)

How many bananas do you have left?

bótkhwáam, lỳañ

càw nján lèa bótkhwáam
jıu cák lỳañ?
article, story

How many articles (in a newspaper) do you have left?

sámaasțk, khón

càw nján lèa sámaasțk
jıu cák khón?
member, person

How many members do you have left?

khón, khoopkhúa

càw nján lèa khón jıu cák
khoopkhúa?
people, family

How many families do you have left?
phâa sêt nâa, phýyn
câw nján lyâ phâa sêt
nâa juû câk phýyn
towel (classifier)
How many towels do you have left?

peeŋ, thâu khêsw, an
câw nján lyâ peeŋ thâu
khêsw juû câk an
brush, brush teeth (classifier)
How many tooth brushes do you have left?

C-1

(khâw) (sōŋ thôn)
A. diawnli khâcâw nján lyâ
khâw juû sōŋ thôn,
medi booc?
(rice, two sacks)
Now they have two sacks of rice left, isn't that right?

(khâw)
B. medi lêsw, diawnli
khâcâw nján lyâ juû
sōŋ thôn
(rice)
Yes, that's right, now they have two sacks (of rice) left.

C-2

(mâak kûaj)
A. câw nján lyâ mâak kûaj
juû câk nûaj?
(bananas)
How many bananas do you have left?

(hâa)
B. khêj nján lyâ mâak
kûaj juû hâa nûaj
(five)
I have five bananas left.
C-3

(สองผ้า)

A. ค่าวผ้าผืนละผืนจุ๊บ ผ้า
สองผ้าผืน?

Of what objects of cloth do you have two left?

(ผ้าสีผืน)

A. ข้ามผ้าผืนละผืนผืน ผ้าสีผืน?

I have two towels left.

ผ้าสีผืน?


towels

209
CYCLE 47

M-1

khâw
  khâw háw mót lèëw  rice

mâak phét
  mâak phét háw mót lèëw  Our (green, red) pepper is all gone.

nàm paa
  nàm paa háw mót lèëw  fish sauce
  Our fish sauce is all gone.

kya
  kya háw mót lèëw  salt
  Our salt is all gone.

nàmtaan
  nàmtaan háw mót lèëw  sugar
  Our sugar is all gone.

phîkthâj
  phîkthâj háw mót lèëw  black pepper
  Our black pepper is all gone.

khâwcû
  khâwcû háw mót lèëw  bread
  Our bread is all gone.

sîin
  sîin háw mót lèëw  meat
  Our meat is all gone.
M-2

khâw
khâw hâw kâj si môt lèsw  rice
Our rice is almost gone.

nàmmán bee
nàmmán bee hâw kâj si môt butter
Our butter is almost gone.
lèsw

nàmmán mûû
nàmmán mûû hâw kâj si môt lard
Our lard is almost gone.
lèsw

nàmmán sâlât
nàmmán sâlât hâw kâj si salad dressing
Our salad dressing is almost môt lèsw
gone.

phákbûa
phákbûa hâw kâj si môt onion
Our onions are almost gone.
lèsw

phákthiâm
cashew
phákthiâm hâw kâj si môt garlic
Our garlic is almost gone.
lèsw

mâak tèen
cucumbers
mâak tèen hâw kâj si môt Our cucumbers are almost lèsw
gone.

mâak thûa
beans
mâak thûa hâw kâj si môt Our beans are almost gone.
lèsw

211
M-3
môt lèzw
kàj si môt lèzw

All gone.
Almost all gone.

M-4
nàmpaa
nàmpaa hāw njān jùu

fish sauce
We still have fish sauce.
salt
We still have salt.
black pepper
We still have black pepper.
onions
We still have onions.
bread
We still have bread.

khâwcīt
khâwcīt hāw njān jùu

sǐn núa
sǐn núa hāw njān jùu

beef
We still have beef.
fruit
We still have fruit.
C-1
(màakphêt) (pepper)

A. màakphêt hâw môt lèsw bôô?
Are we out of pepper?

B. ǝǝ, môt lèsw
Yes, we are out of it.

C-2
(nàmmán sálát) (salad dressing)

A. nàmmán sálát hâw kàj si môt lèsw bôô?
Are we nearly out of salad dressing?

B. ǝǝ, kàj si môt lèsw
Yes, we are almost out of it.

C-3
(màakphêt) (pepper)

A. màakphêt hâw môt lèsw bôô?
Are we out of pepper?

B. bôô, màakphêt hâw njâŋ jôm
No, we still have some.

-------------

撤离后将怎么办?

-------------

213
NOTES

1) mó̂t means 'to be used up'. It is used to indicate that the supply of something is exhausted: nàmpaad mó̂t ̀sëw 'The fish sauce is all gone.'

When kà̂j sì precedes mó̂t, it indicates that the supply is nearly used up.

The manner in which something was consumed can be indicated by putting a verb before mó̂t: kìn mó̂t 'eaten up', etc.

2) lỳa is used to indicate that something remains from an amount which was originally set aside for some special purpose. Observe the use of lỳa in sentences:

khôj njân lỳa pỳm juu sô̂n hûa 'I have two books left.'
(to me still remains book 2) (of the ones I brought back from Germany.)

The classifier phrase indicating the amount is not immediately next to its NP but follows juu.

3) njân ... juu is used to indicate that a certain situation still continues to exist. It may be used without lỳa but with some difference in meaning. Compare:

mâak kwùaj njân juu 'We still have bananas.'
(There's no need to buy any more).

mâak kwùaj njân lỳa juu 'We still have bananas (left over from making a banana cake).'

214
APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks:

(a) cǎw njāŋ ____________ sāmāśīk ____________ cāk khōn
   (How many members do you have left?)

(b) nāmmān bēe hāw ____________ mōt lēsw
   (Our butter is almost gone.)

(c) ____________ hāw mōt lēsw
   (Our garlic is all gone.)

(d) kya hāw ______________
   (We still have salt.)

(e) māakphēt hāw mōt lēsw ____________
   (Are we out of pepper?)

(f) ______________ hāw njāŋ jūū
   (We still have beef.)

(g) bēe, ______________
   (We're out of it.)

(h) khōj njāŋ lēa paa jūū ____________
   (I have two fish left.)

(i) khācǎw __________ aahān __________ lēsw
   (They ate up the food.)
(j) diawnlī khēj njān līa ______ jūu ________
(Now I have two kips left.)

(k) ______________________________ lēsw
(Time's up!)

(l) cāw njān līa __________________ jūu cǎk __________?
(How many bananas do you have left?)

Answers:  (a) līa... jūu  (b) kāj si  (c) phākthīam  (d) njān jūu  
(e) būo  (f) sīn núā (g) mōt lēsw  (h) sōn too (i) kīn...
  mōt (j) nēn... sōn kīp (k) mōt wēelāa (l) māak kūaj
  ... nūaj.
M-1

نة

khácàw mót نة lèsw

They are already broke.

khwáam khít

idea, thought

khácàw mót khwáam khít lèsw

They are already out of ideas.

kamláncaj

will power, encouragement

khácàw mót kamláncaj lèsw

They are already discouraged.

khwáam penhúañ

worry, concern

khácàw mót khwáam penhúañ lèsw

They are already free of concern

thòot

punishment, penalty

khácàw mót thòot lèsw

They have already paid their debt to society.

weeláa

time

khácàw mót weeláa lèsw

Their time is up already.

sännjáa

contract, agreement

khácàw mót sännjáa lèsw

Their contract is already over.

wǎŋ

hope

khácàw mót wǎŋ lèsw

They have no more hope.
M-2

khácàw njàŋ míi kamlàŋcaj jùu  They are still of a mind (to... )

Khwàam ótthón  patience
khácàw njàŋ míi khwàam ótthón jùu  They still have patience.

Khámthàam  question
khácàw njàŋ míi khámthàam jùu  They still have questions.

Panhàa  problem
khácàw njàŋ míi panhàa jùu  They still have problems.

Khwàam sàmphàn, kan  relations, one another
khácàw njàŋ míi khwàam sàmphàn kan jùu  They still have relations with one another.

Klatsàŋ  dislike
khácàw njàŋ klatsàŋ kan jùu  They still dislike one another

Hàkphèëŋ kan  love one another
khácàw njàŋ hàkphèëŋ kan jùu  They still love one another.
C-1

(mót ṭên)  (to be broke)

A. càw mót ṭên lèsw boø? Are you broke?
B. eë, khâj mót ṭên lèsw Yes, I'm broke.

C-2

(míi kamlâncaj)  (of a mind)

A. khâcàw njâŋ míi kamlâncaj jûu boø? Are they still of a mind (to... )?
B. eë, khâcàw njâŋ míi kamlâncaj jûu Yes, they are.

C-3

(mót khwâam penhûan)  (free of concern)

A. càw mót khwâam penhûan lèsw boø? Are you already free of concern?
B. bôj, khâj njâŋ míi khwâam penhûan jûu No, I am still {concerned worried.
CYCLE 49

M-1

aasäj, hyan
láaw njāŋ aasäj jūu hyan
càw jūu boo?

live, dwell; house
Is he still living in your house?

to be in the military service
Is he still in the service

to be out of work
Is he still out of work?

to be attached to, work
Is he still tied up with his work?

to be indebted (to)
Is he still indebted to you?

go out, carry out a mission or duty
Is he still going out on the mission?

220
thṣṣyék khẳn
láaw njẳn thṣṣyék khẳn jṳ ún boɔ?
to be locked up
Is he still locked up?

lọnthảーン
láaw njẳn lọnthảーン jṳ ún boɔ?
to lose one's way
Is he still lost?

M-2

Sọk thẳnẳn
léaw Sọk thẳnẳn tɛɛ don lɛɛw
leave the military service
He left the service a long time ago.

mịi w hàk hɛt
léaw mịi w Hàk hɛt tɛɛ don lɛɛw
to have work to do
He got a job a long time ago.

wẳanwìak
láaw wẳanwìak tɛɛ don lɛɛw
to be free of work
He has had spare time for a long time.

sàjnị́, mó́t
léaw sàjnị́ mó́t tɛɛ don lɛɛw
pay off one's debt, entirely
He paid off his debts a long time ago.

thṣṣyék pʊŋj
láaw thṣṣyék pʊŋj tɛɛ don lɛɛw
to be released, to be let free
He was released a long time ago.
nǐ1, câak

lāaw nǐ1 câak khër

tēē don lēsw

sāw

lāaw sāw āok pāj pātībāt

nāan tēē don lēsw

go away, escape; from

He left me a long time ago.

stop

He stopped going out on the mission a long time ago.

C-1

(aasāj jūn hyān câw)

A. lāaw njān aasāj jūn

hyān câw jūn bóō?

B. ēe, lāaw njān aasāj jūn

hyān khër jūn
(live in your house)

Is he still living in your house?

Yes, he is still living in my house.

C-2

(āok thāhān)

A. lāaw āok thāhān lēsw

bōō?

B. ēe, lāaw āok thāhān tēē

don lēsw

(leave the military service)

Has he already left the service?

Yes, he left the service a long time ago.

C-3

(khāā wīlak)

A. lāaw njān khāā wīlak

jūn bōō?

B. bāō, lāaw wāān wīlak tēē

don lēsw

(tied up with the work)

Is he still tied up with the work?

No, he was free (of work) a long time ago.
M-1

leən, dii
lōt láaw njàŋ leən dii
jinputs boo?

mī, sàphaap
lōt láaw njàŋ mī sàphaap
dii jinputs boo?

kāk, thỳyk kāk
lōt láaw njàŋ thỳyk kāk
jinputs boo?

phée
dlōt láaw njàŋ phée jinputs
boo?

jāñ
lōt láaw njàŋ bōs mī
jāñ jinputs boo?

khāa, tom
lōt láaw njàŋ khāa tom
jinputs boo?

pseŋ
lōt láaw njàŋ pseŋ j inputs
boo?

run; good, well
Is his car still running well?

have; condition, state
Is his car still in good condition?

detain; to be detained
Is his car still being detained?

break down
Is his car still broken down?

rubber, tire
Is his car still without tires?

to be stuck (to), mud
Is his car still stuck in the mud?

fix, repair
Is his car still being fixed?
sỳy, phuû sỳy

løt lâaw njân bôo míi
phuû sỳy jûu boô?

buy, buyer

Is he still unable to find a buyer for his car?

M-2

taaaj
die

løt lâaw taaj lèsw

His car is already broken down

kâw, lâaj

løt lâaw kâw lâaj lèsw

old; much, many, very

pseñ, lèsw

løt lâaw pseñ lèsw lèsw

repair, fix; complete, finish

leèñ, leèñ dàj

løt lâaw leèñ dàj lèsw

His car is already very old.

run, able to run

His car has already been fixed

His car is already running.

khâaj

sell

løt lâaw khâaj lèsw

His car has already been sold.

lâk, khâw

steal, they

løt lâaw thýyk khâw lâk

His car has already been stolen.

lèsw

fâj, mâj

fire, catch fire

løt lâaw thýyk fâj mâj

His car was already burned up.

dàj khýyn

gain back, get back

løt lâaw dàj khýyn lèsw

He's already gotten his car back.
C-1

(lsen dîi)
(running well)

A. lût càw njân llsen dîi jûn bôô?
Is your car still running well?

B. (latitude njân llsen dîi jûn
Yes, my car is still running well.

C-2

(thîyk khâw lûk)
(be stolen)

A. lût lâaw thîyk khâw lûk lèsw, mên bôô?
His car has already been stolen, isn't that right?

B. èle, lût lâaw thîyk khâw lûk lèsw
That's right, his car has already been stolen.

C-3

(lsen dîi)
(running well)

A. lût lâaw njân llsen dîi jûn bôô?
Is his car still running well?

B. bôô, lût lâaw phêe lèsw
No, his car is broken down.
NOTES
(For Cycles 48, 49, 50)

1) When móț is used with abstract Nouns like kamlánçaįj 'will, spirit', it refers to an absence or lack of something. móț kamlánçaįj 'to be discouraged', móț wâň 'to have no hope' móț thoot 'to be no longer under punishment'.

2) khwáam is a nominalizer, i.e. when it is placed before VP, the VP is changed into NP:

\[
\text{khwáam} + \text{VP} = \text{NP}
\]

\[
\text{khwáam} \quad \text{pen hūăn} \quad \text{khwáampenhūăn}
\]

... 'to be concerned' 'worry, concern'

The nouns formed in this manner are all Abstract Nouns.

3) míî kamlánçaįj jūu means 'to still have one's mind on (doing something) or 'not to have given up the idea of (doing something)'. láaw nján míî kamlánçaįj pen sáaw náa jūu 'He hasn't given up the idea of being a farmer yet.'

4) kan after VP indicates 'mutuality' or 'reciprocity' in an action; it functions somewhat like a reflexive pronoun (myself, himself, etc.) in English:

\[
\text{khácaw nján kbîatsâŋ kan jūu}
\]

'They still dislike each other

5) When thîyįk occurs before certain VP, it functions somewhat like be in the Passive in English:

\[
láaw nján thîyįk khând jūu
\]

'He is still locked up. '

\[
lót láaw thîyįk khàw lâk lèw
\]

'His car has already been stolen.'

thîyįk only occurs before verbs having a bad meaning, such as khán 'to lock up', fâj mâj 'to burn up', etc. Most verbs such as khâj, etc. may occur with either 'active' or 'passive' meaning, thus khâj 'to sell' or 'to be sold', etc.
6) **tēc** don lèsw (lit. 'since a long time already') 'a long time ago' is used to indicate that a situation has been in effect for some time.

lāaw 3ok thāhān tēc don lèsw  'He left the military service a long time ago'.

7) **hēt** wīak means 'to do any kind of work'. **mīi** wīak hēt means 'to have work to do, to have a job.' **wāañ** wīak means 'to be free of work'. It has nothing to do with employment. **khāă** wīak means 'to be tied up in, or very much involved in your job or work.' **wāañ** nāan means 'to be out of a job, unemployed'.

8) **nīi** means 'debt'. **pen nīi** Person means 'to be indebted to a person'. **sàj nīi** means 'to pay off debts'.

**APPLICATION**

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) lāaw _____________ khwāam ótthón.
   (He's out of patience.)

(b) mōt _____________ lèsw
   (The contract has already expired.)

(c) njāń lēa _____________ jūū 2 khō
   (two questions still remain.)

(d) cāw pen _____________ booo?
   (Are you concerned, worried?)

(e) pāthèet ciin dēn njāń mīi __________ kap pāthèque phāmāa jūū
   (Red China still has relations with Burma.)

**Answers:** 1(a)mōt (b)sānnjāā (c)khāmthāam (d)nūañ (e)khwāam sāmphān
(f) càw njàŋ míi ______________ pen nàaj khúu jëw boo?
(Haven't you given up the idea of being a teacher yet?)

(g) khacàw njàŋ kîatsán ______________ jëw
(They still dislike each other.)

(h) càw míi ________________ bûo?
(Do you have work to do?)

(i) lôt jëw hàn ________________ thỳyk
(Cars are sold cheap there.)

(j) khâŋ njàŋ lỳa wéélàa jëw ______________
(I still have ten minutes left.)

(k) hỳan làyw ________________ lèsèw
(His house has already burned down.)

(l) làyw thỳyk khàn ______________
(How long was he locked up?)

(m) phỳan càw thỳyk pëj ______________
(Your friend was released a long time ago.)

(n) càw njàŋ ________________ làyw jëw cák këip
(How many kip do you still owe him?)

(o) làyw njàŋ ________________ jëw hỳan khâŋ
(He's still living at my house.)

(p) khâŋ bû pen nîi càw ________________
(I don't owe you a single kip!)

Answers:  (f)kamlâŋçaj (g)kan (h)wîak hêt (i)khâŋ (j)sîp
nàathîi (k)thỳyk fâj mâm (l)don paandaj (m)têz
don lèsèw (n)pen nîi (o)aasâj(p)cák këip
(q) khêj ______________ mót têe don lêsw
(I paid off my debts a long time ago.)

(r) lêt láaw peen ________ ________
(His car has already been fixed.)

(s) càw ________ thâaj hûup ________ ________ boo?
(Do you still know how to take pictures?)

(t) hýan láaw ________ ________ lêsw boo?
(Has his house been built yet?)

(u) pátuu njân ______________ jûm
(The door is still open.)

(v) khaçêw njân ______________ jûm
(They still love each other.)

(w) lâaw ______________ jûm sâj?
(Where did he get lost?)

(x) lâaw thîyk pûj lêsw phô wàm (lâaw) ________ lêsw
(He has been released already because he has already
paid his debt to society.)

(y) khêj bôj dâj wàw njân phôpôm ______________ lèsw
(I didn't say anything because I was already out of ideas.)

Answers: (q)sàj nîi (r)lêsw lêsw (s)njân... pen jûm (t)pûk lêsw (u)khêj (v)hàkphêsən kan (w)lôn thàan (x)môt thoot (y)môt khwàamkhit
CYCLE 51

M-1

dei

sêa khôj sîi dei

khâw

sêa khôj sîi khâw

lyân

sêa khôj sîi lyân

fàa

sêa khôj sîi fàa

dam

sêa khôj sîi dam

khîaw

sêa khôj sîi khîaw

red

My shirt is red.

white

My shirt is white.

yellow

My shirt is yellow.

sky

My shirt is blue.

black

My shirt is black.

green

My shirt is green.

M-2

nàmtaan

sêa càw sîi njân, sîi
nàmtaan meên bû?

sugar

What color is your shirt, it's brown, isn't it?

grey

What color is your shirt, it's grey, isn't it?
khāw StdString
ṣa c̣aw ṣi njān, ṣi khāw
StdString, mēn buo?

lyān kēc
ṣa c̣aw ṣi njān, ṣi lyān
kēc, mēn buo?

dam dēn
ṣa c̣aw ṣi njān, ṣi dam
dēn, mēn buo?

M-3
sōn
sōn láaw ṣi njān?

tārāvāt
kārāvāt láaw ṣi njān?

kēp
kēp láaw ṣi njān?

sīn
sīn láaw ṣi njān?

thōnthāw
thōnthāw láaw ṣi njān?

kāpaw
kāpaw láaw ṣi njān?

light green
What color is your shirt, it's light green, isn't it?
dark yellow
What color is your shirt, it's dark yellow, isn't it?
blackish red
What color is your shirt, it's blackish red, isn't it?
pants
What color are his pants?
neck tie
What color is his necktie?
shoes
What color are his shoes?
Lao skirt
What color is her Lao skirt?
socks
What color are his socks?
brief-case
What color is his brief-case?
(kārāvāt) (necktie)

A. kārāvāt cāw sīi njāŋ? What color is your tie?

(dēen) (red)

B. kārāvāt khēj sīi dēen. My tie is red.

C-2

(kēep) (shoes)

A. kēep cāw sīi njāŋ, sīi nāmtaan mēēn bōo? What color are your shoes? They are brown, aren't they?

B. mēēn lēēw, kēep khēj sīi nāmtaan. Yes, my shoes are brown.

NOTES

1) sīi 'color' normally proceeds the word for colors, i.e., sīi dēen 'color red', sīi khīaw 'color green', etc.

2) Sentences with sīi in the predicate are normally verbless.

'S My shirt is (color) red'
3) Verbs of color usually occur as modifiers of *sī* and are questioned with *njāŋ* 'What (kind)?'

Q: sāŋ cāw sī njāŋ? 'What color's your shirt?'
A: sī khāw 'It's' green.'

4) Color verbs may be modified by the addition of *kē* 'dark (in shade) and *mūn* 'light (in shade)', thus *sī* khāw *mūn* means 'light green' and *sī* deēn *kē*, 'dark red.' Mixtures are sometimes indicated by using two color verbs such as *sī* dam deēn 'reddish black', or *sī* khāw *lyāŋ* 'yellowish white'.

**APPLICATION**

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) nūa lám nī ________ (What color is this boat?)
(b) sāŋ phūyn nān ________ (That shirt is red.)
(c) māak klāŋ nūaj njāj __________, meēn boō? (That large orange is green, isn't it?)
(d) lāaw miī cōk ________ boō? (Does he have a blue glass?)
(e) kāj too nān sī ________ (That chicken's brown.)
(f) sāŋ rōn lāaw ________ (Her raincoat is light green.)
(g) __________ cāw sī dam (Your shoes are black.)
(h) __________ lāaw sī njāŋ? (What color is her Lao skirt?)
(i) kāpaw khōj __________ (My briefcase is dark brown.)
(j) kārāvāt cāw sī ________ (Your tie is yellow.)

Answers: (a)sī njāŋ (b)sī deēn (c)sī khāw (d)sī fāa (e)nāmtaan (f)sī khāw mūn (g)kēēp (h)sīn (i)sī nāmtaan kē (j)lyāŋ
CYCLE 52

M-1

*njaaŋ, wāj*

lāaw njaaŋ wāj phōot

*saā, hètwīak*

lāaw hètwīak saā phōot

*khoɔj, wàw*

lāaw wàw khoɔj phōot

*dyŋ, héŋŋ, sỳak*

lāaw dyŋ sỳak héŋŋ phōot

*dàn, wàw*

lāaw wàw dàn phōot

*don, juu, hân*

lāaw juu hân don phōot

*njāak, māk*

lāaw māk njāak phōot

*lāaj, kin*

lāaw kin lāaj phōot

*walk; fast, quick*

He walks too fast.

*slow, work*

He works too slow.

*gentle; speak, say*

He speaks too softly.

*pull, strong, rope*

He pulls too hard on the rope.

*loud, speak*

He speaks too loud.

*long time, stay, there*

He stayed there too long.

*difficult, like*

He likes to make things harder than they are.

*much, many; eat*

He eats too much.
M-2

láaw njān wáj paandaj?  How fast does she walk?

ŋáam, fōon  pretty, beautiful, dance
láaw fōon njāam paandaj?  How well does she dance?

hīam, kēn  learn, study; good, smart, clever
láaw hīam kēn paandaj?  How is he doing in his studies?

hōon phēen, mūan  sings songs; melodious
láaw hōon phēen mūan paandaj?  How well does she sing?

dāj phāasāa, dii  able to speak a language; well, good
láaw dāj phāasāa láaw dii paandaj?  How well can he speak Lao?

njōk, nànnāk  lift, weight
láaw njōk nànnāk dāj lāaj paandaj?  How much weight can he lift?

M-3

njān, wáj  walk, fast
láaw njān bōo wáj paandaj  He doesn't walk very fast.

sūn, khŷn, mān  high, ascend, it
mān khŷn bōo sūn paandaj  It doesn't go up very high.
láaw hīam bōo wáj paandaj  He doesn't learn very fast.
heen, lōt

lōt láaw lēen bọọ heen paandaj

strong, powerful; car

His car doesn’t have much power.

khian, nāam

láaw khian bọọ nāam paandaj

write; pretty, beautiful

His handwriting is not very pretty.

hian, waj

láaw hian bọọ wāj paandaj;

learn, fast

He doesn’t learn very fast.

M-4

kháplōt, wāj

láaw bọọ kháplōt wāj paandaj

drive, fast

He didn’t drive very fast.

sok kamlān, kaaj, lỳaj lỳaj

láaw bọọ sok kamlān kaaj lỳaj lỳaj paandaj

exercise, physical, often

He doesn’t do much physical exercise.

aw hāj, lāaj

láaw bọọ aw hāj lāaj paandaj

give, much

He didn’t give very much.

aw paj, mōt

láaw bọọ aw pỳm paj mōt

take; all, completely

He didn’t take all the books.

kin, mōt

láaw si bọọ kin mōt

eat, all entirely

He’s not going eat all of it.

236
M-5

njān wāj wāj dēk
wāw khō̍pj khō̍pj dēk
khāplōt sàa sàa dēk
dān dān dān dēk
kin lāaj lāaj dēk

Walk faster, please.
Speak softly, please.
Drive slowly, please.
Read loudly, please.
Eat a lot, please.

C-1

(wāw wāj)
A. cāw wāw wāj phōot. wāw
sāa sāa dēk.

You speak too fast. Speak
slowly, please.

(wāw sāa sāa)
B. khō̍thō̍t. khō̍j si wāw
sāa sāa.

I'm sorry. I'll speak
slowly.

C-2

(fō̍n nāam)
A. làaw fō̍n nāam paandaj?

How well does she dance?

(fō̍n bō̍ nāam)
B. làaw fō̍n bō̍ nāam paandaj

She doesn't dance very well.

C-3

(khāplōt wāj)
A. làaw si khāplōt wāj bōo?

Is he going to drive fast?

(khāplōt wāj)
B. bōo, làaw si bōo khāplōt
wāj

No. He's not going to drive
fast.
(khyan n'eam)

A. laaw khyan n'eam bœ? Is his handwriting pretty?

(khyan bœ n'eam)

låaw khyan bœ n'eam paandaj His handwriting is not very pretty.

NOTES

1) phoot 'to be in excess' normally occurs after stative verbs: laaw njaan waj phoot 'He walks too fast'. The negative form of phoot is bœ ... paandaj 'Not very'. The position of bœ in the sentence is important: Compare låaw bœ njaan waj paandaj 'He doesn't walk very fast!' or 'He isn't walking very fast!' (because he doesn't want to) with låaw njaan bœ (daj) waj paandaj 'He doesn't walk very fast!' (because he is unable to walk faster).

2) The form paandaj is used after the stative verb in questions to find out the manner in which an activity is being carried out: låaw hoon phëeg muan paandaj 'How well does she sing?'
APPLICATION

1) Write out a reasonable answer to the following questions:

(a) láaw wàw daŋ paandaj? láaw wàw ____________________
(b) mía càw njăn wáj paandaj? láaw njăn ______________
(c) láaw jùu hân don paandaj? _______________________

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(d) láaw át páttuu ____________________________
   (He closed the door too quickly.)
(e) láaw _______ hían ________ dii paandaj
   (He's not learning very fast (because he doesn't want to).)
(f) láaw hòon phéen _________________________ mûaj paandaj
   (She doesn't sing very melodiously (because she has a very poor voice.).
(g) càw dàn wáj __________________________
   (You read very fast.)
(h) láaw wàw pháasăa láaw ___________________
   (He speaks Lao too slowly.)

Answers: (a) daŋ phòot (or) bût đaŋ paandaj (b) wáj phòot (or) bût wáj paandaj (c) hòk aathit (or) don phòot (or) bût don paandaj (d) wáj phòot (e) bût (f) bût (g) lâaj (h) saa phòot
CYCLE 53

M-1

aan wáj
láaw aan wáj boo?
read fast

wàw cèen
láaw wàw cèen boo?
speak clearly

athībaaj lā-ṭat
láaw athībaaj lā-ṭat boo?
Did he speak clearly?

hían dìì
láaw hían dìì boo?
explain thoroughly

hían kēn
láaw hían kēn boo?
Did he explain it thoroughly?

njàañ njàak
láaw njàañ njàak boo?
be a good student

Is he a good student?

to be a good learner

Is he a good student?

have trouble walking

Does he have trouble walking?

M-2

kēn
kēn sômkhúán
smart

Pretty smart.

cèen
cèen sômkhúán
clear

Pretty clear.

hàaj héen
hàaj héen sômkhúán
serious

Pretty serious.
máw
máw sômikhúan to be drunk
Pretty drunk.

mūan
enjoyable
mūan sômikhúan Pretty enjoyable.

C-1
A. lâaw mànn wâj boô? Does he read fast?
B. wâj sômikhúan Pretty fast.

C-2
A. lâaw mànn wâj paandaj? How fast does he read?
B. wâj sômikhúan Pretty fast.

C-3
A. lâaw mànn kîn sômikhúan boô? Is he a pretty good student?
B. kîn sômikhúan jûn Pretty good (smart).

NOTES

1) sômikhúan 'suitably, properly' is used after stative verbs to indicate a degree which is neither too much in one direction nor the other.

lâaw mànn wâj sômikhúan 'He reads fairly fast.'

2) When njàâk 'to be difficult' occurs after an action verb, it indicates that the action is taken with difficulty:

athîbaaj njàâk 'It's difficult to explain.'
APPLICATION

1) Answer the following questions with an indication that the action referred to is done fairly well:

(a) láaw wàw pháasää láaw dii boo? __________________

(b) láaw lóñ khândaj wáj paandaj? __________________

(c) láaw lóoj nàm kẹñ paandaj? __________________

(d) kàncaj sìi náathíi njàak paandaj? __________________

Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide:

(e) láaw làw lýañ nàn ______ dii
   (He told the story in detail.)

(f) láaw kin làw bia láaj kèsaw. láaw ______________
   (He drank several bottles of beer. He's pretty drunk.)

(g) láaw kháp lòt ______________
   (He drives pretty fast.)

(h) paj bẹñ sìinée______________
   (Going to the movies is pretty good fun.)

(i) át pọñ-jìam nàn phùn ______ boo?
   (Is it difficult to close that window over there?)

(j) láaw áthībaaj ______________
   (His explanations are not very thorough.)

Answers: (a)dii sômkhúañ (b)wáj sômkhúañ (c)kẹñ sômkhúañ
          (d)njàak sômkhúañ (e)là-fat (f)maw sômkhúañ (g)wáj
          sômkhúañ (h)mùañ sômkhúañ (i)njàak (j)bọñ là-fat
          paandaj
(k) tit-tso káp phuu nân ____________________
(It's not very difficult to contact that person.)

(l) pian jaan njèak ________________________
(Changing a tire is fairly difficult.)

(m) làaw phîm nànsýy _______________________
(She types fairly well.)

(n) aakaan khøŋ làaw ________________________ sômkhúan
(He is rather seriously ill.)

Answers: (k)bøh njàak paandaj (l)sômkhúan (m)køŋ sômkhúan
(n)hàaj hëŋ
CYCLE 54

M-1

kin

jāā kin láaj!

Don't eat too much!
ed

kháplōt wāj

jāā kháplōt wāj láaj!

Don't drive too fast!
drive fast

fōt

jāā fōt láaj!

Don't be too noisy!
be noisy

lua

jāā lua láaj!

misbehave

khīikhāan

jāā khīikhāan láaj!

Behave yourself!
be lazy

cōm

jāā cōm láaj!

Don't be too lazy!
complain, grumble

M-2

tōtōn

tōtōn

Please don't touch.
touch (with hands)

kārūnāa jāā tōtōn

block the way

tan thāañ

kārūnāa jāā tan thāañ

Please don't block the way.
hést săn dăng
    kárünáa jàa hést săn dăng
make noise
    Please don't make noise.

lōpkuan
    kárünáa jàa lōpkuan.
disturb
    Please don't disturb(anyone).

jāp, njāa
    kárünáa jàa jāp njāa
step on, grass
    Please don't step on the grass.

sûup jaa
    kárünáa jaa sûup jaa
smoke
    Please don't smoke.

M-3

khāw
    hāam khāw
enter
    Do not enter.

sûup jaa
    hāam sûup jaa
smoke
    Do not smoke.

pāēt
    hāam pāēt
open
    Do not open.

sūnā
    hāam sūnā
pass, race
    Do not pass.

lūanlām
    hāam lūn lām
trespass
    Do not trespass.

thīm khīi njāa
    hāam thīm khīi njāa
dump trash
    No dumping.
dét dɔokmàj

hâam dét dɔokmàj

pick flowers

Do not pick flowers.

C-1

A. khɔij bɔɔ jâak hâj láaw
   kin lâaj
   càw bɔɔk láaw hâj khɔij
dेे

I don’t want him to eat too much.

Would you please tell him for me.

B. jåa kin láaj

Don’t eat too much.

C-2

A. khácàw bɔɔk njàŋ hàw?
   (teʔtɔon)

What did they tell us?

(touch)

B. khácàw bɔɔk hàw waʔ
kàrûnàa jåa teʔtɔon

They told us. Please don’t touch.

C-3

(pàaj)

What does that sign say?

(sign)

B. hâam sùup jaa

No smoking.

(smoke)
NOTES

1) The request form in Lao is the Verb Phrase without NP (subject): paj kin khâw 'Go eat!' The request may be softened by putting kârûnâa (Lit. 'kindness') 'please' before NP, kârûnâa wâw sâa sâa 'Please speak slower' or by putting dêe after VP: njâan wâj wâj dêe 'Walk faster, please.'

2) The negative request form is: jëa 'don't' + VP: jëa kin lâaj 'Don't eat too much.' This request form may also be softened by putting kârûnâa before it: kârûnâa jëa tan thàañ 'Please don't block the way.'

3) In written Lao hâm 'It is forbidden to' is normally used. One sometimes sees signs like this: hâm sûup jëa 'No Smoking'. hâm is rarely used in spoken Lao in this construction.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) ____________ jëa sûup jëa (Please don't smoke.)
(b) (A sign) ____________ lûañlâm
(c) jëa ____________ lâaj (Don't be too lazy.)
(d) âân dan dan ____________
(e) ____________ wâj wâj (Walk fast.)
(f) ____________ tõop
khâmthâam khôo nân (Don't answer that question.)

Answers: (a) kârûnâa (b) hâm (c) khîikhàan (d) dêe (e) njâan (f) jëa
(g) (Sign) __________ thāāj hùup jūu nīi (No picture taking here.)

(h) jāā khoákin __________ (Don't cook too much.)

(i) __________ thēe lōn jūu hân (Don't dump it out there.)

(j) wāān wàj phùn __________ (Please put it over there.)

(k) (Sign): hāam __________ (Don't enter.)

(l) __________ kin aahāan phét lāāj (Don't eat too much hot spicy food.)

Answers: (g)hāam (h)lāāj (1)jāā (j)dee (k)khāw (1)jāā
CYCLE 55

M-1

sǎj

càw paj sǎj máa? Where have you been (to)?

njăn

càw paj hēt njăn máa? (You just come back) what did you do?

M-2

wät pagoda, temple

khôj paj wät máa I've been to the temple.

kînkhâw to eat (meal)

khôj paj kîn khâw máa I've been to eat.

hâa mỏc see the doctor

khôj paj hâa mỏc máa I've been to see the doctor.

sâk jaa to get a shot

khôj paj sâk jaa máa I've come back from getting a shot.

săaŋ kép khîaŋ warehouse

khôj paj săaŋ kép khîaŋ máa I've been to the warehouse.
C-1

A. càw paj sₐj máa? Where have you been?
    (họônghían)
B. khơj paj họônghían máa I've been to school.

C-2

A. càw paj hēt njăn máa? (You just come back) What
did you do?
    (kinkhâw)
B. khơj paj kinkhâw máa I've been to eat.

NOTES

1) The construction paj ... máa is used to indicate that someone
is returning from having been to some place or having done
something:

    khơj paj wát máa 'I've just been to the temple!.'
    khơj paj kìn khâw máa 'I've been out to eat.'

The type of question may reflect the difference referred to
above:

    càw paj sₐj máa? 'Where have you been?'
    càw paj hēt njăn máa? 'What have you been doing?'
    (Lit. What do you come from doing?)
APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:
   (a) kh提供商 kin kh밤 (I've been to eat.)
   (b) c<?>> paj isSelected m�a? (What have you been doing?)
   (c) kh提供商 paj isSelected m�a (I've been to get a shot.)

2. Answer the following questions according to the actual situation:
   (d) c<?> paj h�t nян m�a?
   (e) c<?> paj s aç m�a?
   (f) c<?> b?? paj h�t nян m�a b○o?
   (g) c<?> b?? paj s aç m�a b○o?

3. Translate the following sentences into English:
   (h) l?>> paj kh提供商 kaceous p��tuu n��n m�a
   (i) phyan kh提供商 paj tiis��k j�� ??p��theeet w��t n��am m�a
   (j) l?>> paj kh밤 th��sw s��am��o?? kh��n

Answers: 
1(a)paj ... m�a 1(b)h�t nян 1(c)s��k jaa
2Your answers will depend on what you have been doing very recently. 3(a)He just come back from unlocking that door. 3(b)My friend has just come back from fighting in Vietnam. 3(c)He's been standing in a line for half an hour.
M-1

phùakcàw màa tèe säj? Where did you all come from?

pỳm, hûa book (classifier)

pỳm hûa nìì màa tèe säj? Where did this book come from?

lôt, khán car (classifier)

lôt khán nìì màa tèe säj? Where did this car come from?

hýabin, lâm airplane (classifier)

hýabin lâm nìì màa tèe säj? Where did this airplane come from?

pyyn, kábòok gun (classifier)

pyyn kábòok nìì màa tèe säj? Where did this gun come from?

cla, phèen paper, sheet (classifier)

cla phèen nìì màa tèe säj? Where did this paper come from?

hýa, lâm boat (classifier)

hýa lâm nìì màa tèe säj? Where did this boat come from?
M-2

tâlåat.

phuak khôj maá têe tâlåat

aw máa, hôonhiân

láaw aw pým hũa nîi máa
têe hôonhiân

pâaksân

lôt khán nîi máa têe

pâaksân

lûañ phâbaañ

hýa lám nîi máa têe lûañ

phâbaañ

aw... máa, hôonkaan

khôj aw cîa phëën nîi máa
têe hôonkaan

tamlûat

tamlûat aw pyyn kâbõok

nîi máa

market

We came from the market.

bring, school

He brought this book from school.

Paksane

This car came from Paksane.

Luang Phrabang

This boat came from Luang Prabang.

bring, office building

I brought this piece of paper from the office.

policeman

The policeman brought this gun.

C-1

A. càw máa têe sáj? Where are you coming from?

(hýan khôj) (my house)

B. khôj máa têe hýan khôj I come from my house.
C-2

(hýabin lám nîl) (this airplane)

A. hýabin lám nîl màa têj sêj?

Where did this airplane come from?

(baŋkôok) (Bangkok)

B. màa têj baŋkôok

It came from Bangkok.

C-3

(pỳm hũa nîl) (this book)

A. pỳm hũa nîl màa têj sêj?

Where did this book come from?

(hôônghían) (school)

B. khêj aw màa têj hôônghían

I brought it from school.
NOTES

tēe + Location is used to refer to the point of origin of something (i.e. the starting point of a trip, the place where something was made, etc.). It is similar in usage to câak. Neither câak nor tēe refer to the birthplace of a person.

Q:  hýabin lâm nî máa tēe sāj  'Where did the plane come from?'
A:  máa tēe baãnkǒok  'It came from Bangkok.'

APPLICATION

1. How would you find out where certain things originated, such as Japanese cars, German beer, etc.?  
2. How would you find out where a certain vehicle had just come from, such as an airplane, bus, etc.?

Answers: to both 1 and 2. are: ... máa tēe sāj
CYCLE 57

M-1

aw paj, kāj, khāaj
take, chicken, sell
láaw si aw kāj paj khāaj
He is taking the chickens to
sell.

sỳy paj, aan
buy and take, read
láaw si sỳy pỳm paj aàn
He is buying the book to read.

thēs, hūa, būat
shave, head, enter the priesthood
láaw si thēs hūa būat
He is having his head shaved
to enter the priesthood.

tēntoo, bun
get dressed, festival
láaw si tēntoo paj bun
He is dressing up to go to
the festival.

cāan, bēn, lūu;k
hire, look at, look after;
offspring
láaw si cāan khôn máà
He is hiring someone to come
bēn lūu;k
and look after his children.

hōokhōo, sōj
request; help, assist
láaw si hōokhōo hāj
He is requesting them to
khācàw máà sōj
come and help.

pôt...sok, kēe;p
remove, take off; shoe
láaw si pôt kēe;p sōk wāj
He is removing his shoes
and putting them away.

làan, myy
wash, hand
láaw si làan myy kin khāw
He is washing his hands in
order to eat.
M-2

sỳy, nàmsỳi

láaw si sỳy nàmsỳi m̀à hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he buying the paint for?

aw...màa

láaw si aw khuḅ màa hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he bringing me here for?

thèe hǔa

láaw si thèe hǔa hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he having his head shaved for?

danfāj

láaw si danfāj hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he starting a fire for?

khỳn pàj

láaw si khỳn pàj hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he going up there for?

lọ̀n màa

láaw si lọ̀n màa hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he coming down here for?

cọọt lọ̀t

láaw si cọọt lọ̀t hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he parking the car for?

nám \( \{ \) pàj màa \( \) \)

láaw si nám khàcàw pàj hǹt njǎŋ?

What is he following them for?
C-1

(tĕnntoo)
A. láaw si tĕnntoo hĕt njāŋ?
B. láaw si tĕnntoo paj bun

(get dressed)
Why is he getting dressed?
(get dressed to go to the festival)
He is getting dressed to go to the festival.

C-2

A. càw si hĕt njāŋ?
B. khôj si càaŋ khôn

What are you going to do?
(hire someone)
I'm going to hire someone.
(comes)
What are you going hire someone for?
(to look after the children)
I'm hiring someone to come to look after my children.

C-3

A. càw hĕt njāŋ ?
B. khôj làaŋ mîy

What are you doing?
(washing my hands)
I'm washing my hands.
(to read)
Are you washing your hands in order to read?
(kinkháw) (to eat)

B. บะโมัย, khêj si làn mày
    paj kinkháw.  No, I'm washing my hands in
    order to eat.

NOTES

1) In English Verb Phrases of Purpose may be joined to other
   VP by to, as in:

   NP + VP + to - VP (Purpose)
   
   He brought chicken to sell.

   Compare this with Lao:

   NP + VP + VP (Purpose)
   
   láaw   aw kâj màa   khêkaj
   brought chicken (to) sell.

2) bûat means 'to enter the Buddhist priesthood'. All young Lao
   men of the Buddhist religion are supposed to spend some
   period of time during their lives living as monks in a monastery.
   One's head is shaved and all worldly possessions are given
   away before entry.

3) a bun is a temple fair. Each temple has at least one bun a
   year as an occasion for reading certain Buddhist scriptures
   and also as a means of raising money to take care of temple
   needs. Many kinds of amusements (dances, songs, games, etc.)
   and many kinds of food are available.
APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw si jyym p'yım khôj ____________
(He will borrow my book to read.)

(b) jûû hîán láaw bôɔ mài nàm. láaw si ____________ làaŋ
(There's no water in his house. He'll take his car out to wash it.)

(c) láaw si ____________ sôn paj hâj phîyan láaw.
(He'll take pictures to send to his friend.)

(d) láaw si pôt kâep khûû mâj ____________
(He'll take off his new shoes to put them away.)

(e) láaw si ____________ pæ̀ năŋšyû hâj láaw.
(He'll bring you to translate the book for him.)

(f) láaw si ____________ kûat bën wîak khôn phûakhâw.
(He'll come down to check our work.)

(g) láaw si ____________ khôn doojsán.
(He'll stop his bus to pick up passengers.)

(h) láaw jâak pen khûubaa. láaw si ____________
(He would like to be a monk priest. He'll shave his head in order to enter the priesthood.)

(i) láaw bôok hâj khôj ____________ khûakîn.
(He told me to build a fire to cook with.)

(j) láaw si khûn ____________ jûû sàän thîi sôn.
(He'll go up to sleep on the second floor.)

Answers: (a)paj sàän (b)aw lôt láaw paj (c)thêmj hùup (d)ôok waj (e)aw càw màà (f)lôn màà (g)côot lôt aw (h)thês hûa bûat (i)dâñfâj (j)paj nòon

260
CYCLE 58

M-1

kàw móon, håa móon khēŋ

tee kàw móon håa håa móon
khēŋ

wân can, wân sük

tee wân can håa wân sük

sàw, khām

tee sàw håa khām

mỳn nî, mỳn yrn

tee mỳn nî håa mỳn yrn

mỳn, wîan can, lûanphābaan

tee mỳn wîan can håa mỳn
lûanphābaan

hỳan

tee hỳan khāj håa hỳan càw

9:00, 5:30
From nine to five-thirty.

Monday, Friday
From Monday through Friday.
morning, night
From morning to dark.
today, tomorrow
From today to tomorrow.
city, Vientiane, Luang Phrabang
From the city of Vientiane
to Luang Phrabang.

M-2

sàj

tee sàj håa sàj?

mỳ, daj, mỳy daj

tee mỳy daj håa mỳy daj?

where (question)
From where to where?

day, which (question), what day
From what day to what day?

261
wééláa, wééláa daj
tee wééláa daj haa wééláa
daj?
móon, câk móon
tee câk móon haa câk móon?
câak, thën
câak sāj thën sāj?

time, when (question)
From when to when?
clock, watch, o'clock; what time?
From what time to what time?
from; to reach, get to
From where to where?

M-3

kháplöt
láaw si kháplöt {câak
tee wiancan paj luân
phābaan

drive
He is going to drive from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

khîī, hỳabin
láaw si khîī hỳabin {câak
tee wiancan paj luân
phābaan

too-dûos̄añ
láaw si khîī
lôtduojsañ {câak
tee wiancan paj
luân phābaan

ride, airplane
He is going to fly from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

inter-city bus
He is going to take an inter-city bus from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.
deenthānŋ
láaw si deenthānŋ \{câak
wiancän pajar luunj
phābaarŋ

make a trip
He is going to make a trip from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

M-4
hōot, sānj, thānŋŋn
phēn cáŋ sānj thānŋŋn \{câak
bāan nli pajar \{thēŋ
hāa bāan nān
hōot

reach, get to; build, street
They will build a road from this village to that village.

sōmsēem
phēn si sōmsēem
thānŋn \{câak
bāan
thēŋ
hāa bāan nān
hōot

mend, repair, restore
They will repair the road from this village to that one.

phūun
phēn cáŋ phūun thānŋŋn \{câak
bāan nli pajar \{hōot
hāa bāan nān
thēŋ

pile up, heap up
They are going to raise the level of the road from this village to that one.

M-5
khōj si khāp lōt cóŋ \{hōot
luunj phābaarŋ

I'll drive until I get to Luang Phrabang.
aanjüⁿ, jüu nám
láaw jüu nám phŏwmĭ̀̀ lāaw
con { thēṅ aanjüⁿ lāaw
 dāj saaw-ḕt pī̀
thāa, mỳā (bāàn)
khōj si thāa lāaw
con { hōt wēelāā
 mỳā bāān
phānjāanjāam, sūtthāāj
khōj si phānjāanjāam pāj
con { thēṅ mỳy sūtthāāj

age, live with
He lived with his parents until he reached the age of 21.

wait for; go home, return home
I'll wait for him until it's time to go home.

try, attempt; last, final
I'll keep trying until the last day.

C-1
A. láaw khāp lōt tḕ hāā sāj
 hāā sāj?
B. láaw khāp lōt tḕ hāā hōonkaan lāaw
He drove from where to where?
He drove from his house to his office.

C-2
A. cāw si jüu nìī tḕ mỳy
daj hāā mỳy daj?
B. khōj si jüu nìī tḕ mỳy
wāncan hāā mỳy wān aathit
You will be here from what day to what day?
I will be here from Monday to Sunday.
C-3

A. càw si khâplôt câk wîändig paj thën sêj?
   You are going to drive from Vientiane to where?

B. khêj si khâplôt câk wîändig paj thën lûañ phêbaan
   I'm going to drive from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

A. lêsw càw si hêt njêng?
   Then what will you do?

B. khêj si khî hyâbin câk lûañ phêbaan paj myân sêng
   I'll fly from Luang Phrabang to Muong Sing.

C-4

A. càw si thâa láaw con thêng cák móon?
   Until what time are you going to wait for him?

B. khêj si thâa con thêng sip sôong móon
   I'll wait for him until twelve o'clock.

สลักจากงานที่จัดให้และวัสดุที่เกี่ยวข้อง การจะลงยษ์บัตรที่เป็นไปได้
แอบได้? หลักะจะจัดเก็บข้อมูลที่เก็บไว้ในระบบใด? และมีบุคคลที่จะข้อมูล
ที่ไม่ควรจะให้? ปลอดความรู้สึกมองได้อย่างไร? เฉพาะหัวข้อที่เกี่ยวกับข้อมูลเป็นส่วนไม่ซ้ำซี้
ยง มีอาจจะไปถูกมองโดยผู้ที่ละลายถูกต้อง. แรงดันข้อมูลที่ลงยษ์บัตรมายามใหญ่ไม่มี
ความสมบัติของงานที่เกี่ยวข้อง การลงยษ์บัตร ตั้งแต่สิ่งที่เกี่ยวข้องกับสถานที่ บัตรที่ส่ง
เสร็จสิ้นการลงยษ์บัตรด้วยที่เกี่ยวข้อง; แต่จากการที่จะใช้บัตรลงยษ์บัตรไปในสถานที่
ปุญญมาผู้และคลังสินและสถานที่สำคัญต่าง ๆ ถ้ามีอยู่.
NOTES

In Lao there are several ways to refer to an extent of space or period of time that is bounded on both ends.

1) _tunnel ...  _hāa_ is used if 'static' space or duration of time is referred to:

_tunnel mān wiancâm hāa mān_  

_lūan phābañ_

_tunnel kàw mōon hāa hāa móon_  

_khān_

'From Vientiane to Luang Prabang.'

'from 9:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m.'

2) If emphasis is on motion between two points in space, _câak / _ tunnel ... _ pāj_ (hāa) is used.

_láaw sī khâplôt_  

{ _câak_  

_tunnel wiancâm pāj_ (hāa) _ lūan phābañ_  

_He will drive from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.'_

Frequently the means of transportation is indicated in constructions of this type (_khîi_ hāa, etc.).

3) If emphasis is on reaching a certain limit or goal. _thēn_ 'to reach', _hāa_ 'to or towards', or _hōot_ 'to arrive at' may be used:

_phān cāo sān thānōn_  

{ _câak_  

_tunnel bān nîl pāj_  

{ _thēn_  

_hāa_  

_bān nān_  

_hōot_  

'They will build a road from this village to that village.'

The reference is usually to a known goal or limit.

4) _con ... { _hōot_  

_ thēn_ _ is used to indicate that some activity will proceed only until a certain limit is reached. It may not be known when that limit will be reached.

_khēñ sī thāa láaw con_  

{ _hōot_  

_ thēn_  

_wēélāa mā yā bān_  

'I will wait for her until it's time to go home. (but no longer)'
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khácàw hían ______ kàw móon sàw ______ bàaj siI móon
   (They study from 9:00 to 4:00 p.m.)

(b) jùa mýaŋ améelikaa khón sùaan màak hêt kaan tse ______ hāa ________?
   (In America most people work from what day to what day?)

(c) ______ tse wíancan hāa lùaŋ phábàaŋ kin wéeláa ________
   (It takes one hour to fly from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.)

(d) càw dàj hían pháasāa lāaw ______ bótihn daj ______
   bótihn daj?
   (You studied Lao from what lesson to what lesson?)

(e) càw si kháiplöt ______ wíancan ______ pâaksée boɔ,
   lỳy wàa càw si khI hýa paj?
   (Are you going to drive a car or go by boat from
   Vientiene to Pakse?)

(f) phùak khón cǐn cá? sâan thánññ tìe mýaŋ khácàw paj ______
   mýaŋ daj?
   (The Chinese are going to build a road from their city
to what city?)

Answers: 1(a)tse... hāa (b)mýy daj... mýy daj (c)khI
   hyabin... nỳŋ sùa móon (d)tse... hāa
   (e)câak (f)hòôt
   (tse... paj (thòŋ

267
(g)  " " wiancan " " myan phon hon mi hok sip kilomnet  
(It is 60 kilometers from Vientiane to Phonhong.)

(h) khon amelikan baankhon juu nam phooms khacaw " "  
aanju° da sjaw-ed pii  
(Some Americans live with their parents up to age 21.)

(i) khacaw si naŋ lin juu nii " " weelaa mya ban  
(They will sit here playing until it's time to go home.  
(and no longer).)

(j) khacaw si " " phak juu myan nii " " soon aathit  
(They won't stay in this town as long as 2 weeks.)

---

Answers: (g){tæ} \( \text{cåak} \) ... paj haă (h) {hòot} (i) {tëŋ}  
(j) bôô ... têñ
CYCLE 59

M-1

cép thòn
láaw cép thòn

stomach ache

pūat hūa
láaw pūat hūa

a headache

He has a stomach ache.

He has a headache.

ten khâj
láaw ten khâj

to have fever

He has a fever.

ten wát
láaw ten wát

to have a cold

He has a cold.

thēok thòn
láaw thēok thòn

to have diarrhea

He has diarrhea.

ten aj
láaw ten aj

to have a cough

He has a cough.

wín hūa
láaw wín hūa

to be dizzy

He is dizzy.

M-2

ten njān
láaw ten njān?

What's wrong

What's wrong with him?

bō̌̄ saaaj
láaw bō̌̄ saaaj bō̌̄?

sick

Is he sick?
kháj khûn
láaw kháj (khûn) dée
lèew boo?

getting better

Is he getting better?

aakaan
aakaan khôọŋ láaw pen nêewdaj?

condition

How is his condition?

bôŋ sábaaj láaj
láaw bôŋ sábaaj láaj boo?

very sick

Is he very sick?

hǎaj, sàw
láaw {hǎaj sàw lèew boo?

recover

Has he recovered?

M-3

bôŋ hàaj héen paandaj! Not very serious.

hàaj héen láaj! Very serious (critical).

dii khûn dée lèew

A little better!

dii khûn lâaj lèew!

Much better!

sût sóom lôn kwâkkâw Worse than before!

phôopaan kâw Still the same.
C-1

A. cìw pen njàŋ?  What's wrong with you?

B. khọj cép thọn  I have a stomach ache.

C-2

A. làaw bọl sàbaaj bọo?  Is he sick?

B. mìn lèɛw, làaw bọl  Yes, he is sick; he has a
       sàbaaj, làaw pen aj  cough.

NOTES

1) cép means 'to hurt'. It is used to refer to the feeling one
   has right after an injury; hence it is usually temporary.
   pùat means 'to ache'. It normally refers to a more lasting
   sensation than cép. cép húa would refer to a bump on the head,
   whereas, pùat húa would refer to the 'headache' that might
   come from the bump. In some cases the above distinction
   doesn't exist and cép is one kind of painful sensation and
   pùat is another.

2) pen + name of disease may also be used to indicate what par-
   ticular ailment one has, such as làaw pen wát 'He has a cold.'
   tít wát means 'to catch cold.'

3) wín 'to be dizzy' may be followed by húa 'head'. wín húa
   means 'to be dizzy (in the head)'. thọk means 'to pour
   out (as with liquids, etc.)'; when thọk occurs with thọn
   it means 'dysentery, diarrhea'.
4) Either of the following may be used interchangeably to inquire about the health of a person:

lāaw pen njaŋ? 'What's wrong with him?'
lāaw bōc sābaaj bōo? 'Is he sick?'
aakaan khōn lāaw pen nēswdaj? 'How is his condition?'

To inquire whether a person's sickness is subsiding:

lāaw khāj (khyn) dēs lēsw bōo? 'Is he getting better?'
lāaw hāaj (sāw) lēsw bōo? 'Has she recovered?'

5) khyn 'up, go up' and lōn 'down, go down' are both used after stative verbs to indicate a situation that is in process of change; khyn indicates an 'upward' change (dīl khyn 'getting better'); whereas, lōn indicates a 'downward' change (sūt sōom lōn 'becoming worse, worsening').

kwāa kāw (lit. 'than old') 'than before' may occur after lōn or khyn.

phōopaan kāw (lit. equal in extent to old) 'still the same' is used to refer to conditions that have not undergone change.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences according to the English:

   (a) lāaw ________ thōn (He has a stomach ache.)
   (b) khāj ________ sābaaj ______ (I'm very sick.)
   (c) ____________________________ (The situation hasn't changed.)
   (d) càw ____________________________ (What's the matter with you?)
   (e) lāaw ________ aj ________ (Does he have a cough?)
   (f) ____________________________ khājwāt (He has flu.)

Answers: 1(a)cēp (b)bōc... lāaj (c)phōopaan kāw (d)pen njaŋ (e)pen ... bōo (f)lāaw pen
(g) láaw hǎaj lèw bòo? __________________
(Has he recovered yet? Not yet.)

(h) khâj pûat hûa lâaj __________________
(My head hurts worse than before.)

(i) láaw ____________________________ thôon
(He doesn't have a stomach ache.)

(j) láaw máa hêt kaan bôô dàj phôwâl láaw cêp ______
(He couldn't come to work because he had a bad stomach ache.)

(k) wëélâa hâw bôô sàbaaj hâw khûan câ? __________
(When we aren't well, we should go to the doctor's.)

(l) thâan môo bôôk wâh láaw ______, láaw âat câ? tông
paj nôon jûm hôonmôo
(The doctor said he was very sick. He may have to go to
the hospital.)

(m) hâw bôô khûan paj jûm kàj khôn thî ______ phôwâl
hâw âat câ? ________.
(We shouldn't go stay with people who have colds because
we might catch cold.)

(n) mỳy wàan nîi láaw pûat hûa têr wàh láaw bôô phâkphôôn,
mỳy nîi aakaan khôon láaw ____________.
(Yesterday he had a headache but he didn't rest. Today
his condition has become much more serious.)

Answers: (g)njàn (bôô hǎaj) (h)kwâl kâw (1)bôô cêp (j)thôon
lâaj (k)paj hâa môo (1)bôô sàbaaj lâaj (m)pen wât...
tît wât (n)hâaj hêen khûn
CYCLE 60

M-1

máa kaan

pen njango láaw cỳŋ bɔɔ
máa kaan?
come to work

Why doesn't he come to work?

thǎam

pen njango láaw cỳŋ thǎam?
question, ask

Why did he ask?

tɔɔp

pen njango láaw cỳŋ bɔɔ
tɔɔp?
answer

Why doesn't he answer?

phākphɔ̌ɔn

pen njango láaw cỳŋ bɔɔ
phākphɔ̌ɔn?
take a rest

Why doesn't he take a rest?

kin

pen njango láaw cỳŋ kin?
eat

Why did he eat (it)?

dāj paj

pen njango láaw cỳŋ bɔɔ
dāj paj?
get to go

Why didn't he get to go?

M-2

bɔɔ sābaaj

sick

Because he is sick.

khâwcaj

phɔwǎa láaw bɔɔ khâwcaj

Because he doesn't understand.

274
hùu
phỔwaa láaw bɔɔ hùu

mí wéeláa
phỔwaa láaw bɔɔ mí wéeláa

hǐw
phỔwaa láaw hǐw

máa sàa
phỔwaa láaw máa sàa

Because he didn't know.

Because he doesn't have time.

Because he is hungry.

Because he came late.

M-3
sỳy, māj, mí
láaw sỳy lôt māj phỔwaa
láaw mí nến lǎaj

buy, new, have

He bought a new car because he has a lot of money.

sell, old

He bought a new car because he has sold his old car.

pick, get, take; wife

He bought a new car because he is getting married.

get married

He bought a new car because he is getting married
deentháang  travel
láaw sỳy lót mǎj phòwāŋ
láaw si deentháang
He bought a new car because
he is going to make a trip.

C-1
A. pen njāŋ láaw cỳŋ bōŋ
māa kaan?
Why didn't he come to work?
B. phòwāŋ láaw bōo sābaaj
Because he is sick.

C-2
A. pen njāŋ láaw cỳŋ sỳy
lót mǎj?
Why did he buy a new car?
B. láaw sỳy lót mǎj phòwāŋ
láaw si aw mīa
He bought a new car because
he is getting married.

C-3
A. láaw hēt njāŋ?
What did he do?
B. láaw phākkphōŋn
He took a vacation.
A. pen njāŋ láaw cỳŋ
phākkphōŋn?
Why did he take a vacation?
B. láaw phākkphōŋn phòwāŋ
láaw mīi wēelāa
He took a vacation because
he had the time.
NOTES

1) The word order in the pen njàn type of question is:
   
   pen njàn + NP + cỳŋ + VP
   
   pen njàn + láaw cỳŋ bopsis máa
   
   (Why he then not come)

   'Why didn't he come?'

2) pen njàn is always in sentence initial position. hèt njàn
   'Why, for what purpose' always comes after the MV in the
   sentence. láaw si paj hèt njàn jìuí háan tát phôm?

3) The usual response to pen njàn + Sentence is phɔwàa + Sentence:
   
   Q: pen njàn láaw cỳŋ bopsis máa? 'Why didn't he come?'
   
   A: phɔwàa láaw bopsis sábaaj 'Because he was ill.'

   cỳŋ never occurs in responses with phɔwàa.

   In highly stylized spoken or written language the question
   may be answered as follows:

   Q: pen njàn láaw cỳŋ bopsis máa? 'Why didn't he come?'
   
   A: láaw bopsis sábaaj láaw cỳŋ bopsis máa 'He was ill; he, there-
   therefore, didn't come.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:
   
   (a) mỳỳ nìl ________ láaw cỳŋ bopsis máa hólnhían
   
   (Why didn't he come to school today?)

   Answers: l(a)pen njàn
(b) láaw bọṭ tọq khám thàam khácàw ______ láaw bọṭ hùu khám tọq
(He didn't answer their question because he didn't know the answer.)

c) láaw bọṭ jàak mí mìa láaw ______ bọṭ teəŋnáan
(He doesn't want a wife, so he hasn't got married.)

(d) láaw bọṭ thàa khácàw phɔwɔɔ láaw ______, mɛən bọò?
(He didn't wait for them, because he didn't have much time, is that so?)

(e) thàawɔɔ láaw míi ṓn ɔlɔj ______ si sỳy lɔt mɔŋ
(If he had a lot of money, he'd buy a new car.)

(f) ______ láaw ______ thàam hǎa khácàw?
(Why did he ask for them?)

(g) lɔt khán nàn lẹrə bọṭ dìi paandaj láaw cyŋ ______
(That car doesn't run very well, so he's selling it cheap.)

(h) khácàw hɛt wìlak ______ khácàw cyŋ bọṭ phàkphɔɔn.
(Their work is not yet finished, so they are not resting.)

(i) láaw kinkhɔw lèsuw ______ bọṭ hùw
(He's already eaten, so he isn't hungry.)

(j) ______ cɔw cyŋ bọṭ bɔɔk láaw, cɔw bọṭ jàak hɑj láaw hùu bọò?
(Why didn't you tell him? Didn't you want him to know?)

Answers: (b) phɔwɔɔ (c) cyŋ (d) bọṭ míi wéeláa ɔlɔj (e) láaw cyŋ (f) pen njān... cyŋ (g) khǎaj thỳy (h) njāŋ bọṭ lèsuw (i) láaw cyŋ (j) pen njāŋ
CYCLE 61

M-1

 iiduuton
  khôj iiduuton láaw         pity
                       I pity him.

 hāk
  khôj hāk láaw           love
                     I love her.

 jàan
  khôj jàan láaw       to be afraid
                    I am afraid of him.

 hĕn caj
  khôj hĕn caj láaw       to empathize
                       I empathize with him.

 aaj
  khôj aaj láaw       to feel bashful
                   I feel bashful (in front of) him.

 sān
  khôj sān láaw       dislike, hate
                    I hate him.

 keeŋcaj
  khôj keeŋcaj láaw    to have consideration for
                      I have consideration for him.

M-2

 phūūsāaw                   young unmarried girl

  càw mîi khuām hûusýk nêsaw  What kind of feelings do you
  daj tô̄ phūūsāaw phûu nîi?  have towards this young un-
                                  married girl?
náaj thãhãan

càw míi khúam hùusýk nész
daj tơi náaj thãhãan phûû nĩi?

military officer

khônsàj

càw míi khúam hùusýk nész
daj tơi khônsàj phûû nĩi?

servant

nãk thõôt

càw míi khúam hùusýk nész
daj tơi nãkthõôt phûû nĩi?

prisoner

khôn khõothâan

càw míi khúam hùusýk nész
daj tơi khôn
khõothâan phûû nĩi?

beggar

phõõkhàa

càw míi khúam hùusýk nész
daj tơi phõõkhàa phûû nĩi?

merchant

thãan mњo

càw míi khúam hùusýk nész
daj tơi thãan mњo phûû nĩi?

doctor

C-1

A. càw bơõ hën caj láaw bơõ? Don't you empathize with him?
B. khôj hën caj láaw I empathize with him.
C-2

A. càw míi khuâm hûusýk  
  nêewdaj tôi phôõkhàa  
  phûu nìi?

What kind of feelings do you have towards this merchant?

B. khøj míi khuâm hûusýk  
  hëncaj láaw

I have a feeling of empathy with him.

NOTES

1) Verbs of Emotion may be:

(a) Transitive Verb:
  khøj hâk láaw  
  càw sân khøj boɔ?

'I love her.'  
'Do you hate me?'

(b) Stative Verbs:
  láaw aaj càw

(She is shy of you.) 'Your presence causes her to be shy.'

(c) Or compounds with -caj 'heart, soul, spirit':
  khøj hëncaj láaw

'I empathize with him'. (I associate myself with his feelings.)

khøj keencaj láaw

'I have consideration for his feelings.'

keencaj may be used in the negative jàa keencaj with the meaning 'Don't be afraid of imposing on me (by making a request, etc.)!'
2) khúam is a noun formative (like -ness in English). Noun Compounds with khúam as the head of the compound are Abstract Nouns: khúam hûusýk 'feeling', khúamhák 'love', khúamhèncaj 'empathy', khúamaaj 'bashfulness', khúam penhuan 'concern', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences:

(a) phûak khôj _______ láaw phôwáa láaw pen khôn khîi khàan
   (We don't pity him because he is a lazy person.)

(b) khácàw sì têñqìaan kan dyan nàa phôwáa khácàw _______
    màa sòñq piì lèaw
    (They'll get married next month since they have been in
     love for 2 years.)

(c) láaw bôo míi _______ njân _______ khácàw
    (He doesn't have any feelings toward them.)

(d) phûñ láaw _______ láaw têè khácàw sôñj njân láaw
    bôo dâj
    (His friends empathize with him but they can't help him
     any.)

(e) láaw aw lôt khôj paj sàj dooj bôo __________
    (He took my car and used it without considering me.)

Answers: 1(a)bôo iidduton (b)hák kan (c)khúam hûusýk... tôô  
          (d)hêñ caj (e)keèñcaj khôj
(f) __________ bông nắp thỷ y nào j khơơn khâcàw
(Some servants don't respect their bosses.)

(g) náaj thì dii cáºt toªn __________ khôn khơơn láaw
(A boss that is good must love and empathize with his people.)

(h) láaw bông wàa láaw __________ phông khàa thì bông sátṣīy
(He said he dislikes merchants that are not honest.)

(i) láaw __________ wàa khôj cáºt hêt hâj láaw ________
(He's afraid I will make him shy.)

(j) phôn bông bông hàj láaw aaj __________ phôn pen thàan môc
(He told her not to be shy because he is a doctor.)

2. Express how you feel about the following:

(a) The President    (b) The Lao people   (c) dogs
(d) your wife or sister  (e) your children
(f) dishonest people   (g) your religion
(h) meeting strangers

Answers: 1(f) khôn sàj baañ khôn (g) hâk lê hên caj (h) sâñ
(1) jàan... aaj (j) phông wàa  2Your answers will
depend on how you feel about each of these.
CYCLE 62

M-1

khît

khôj khît wâa láaw bôô mâa I didn't think he was coming.

hûu

khôj hûu wâa láaw bôô mâa I knew she wasn't coming.

khâwcaj

khôj khâwcaj wâa láaw bôô mâa I understood he didn't come.

dâj njîn

khôj dâj njîn wâa láaw I heard he didn't come.
bôô mâa

wàw

khôj wàw wâa láaw bôô mâa I said he didn't come.

bûok

khôj bûok wâa láaw bôô mâa I told you he didn't come.

M-2

sîa

càw sîa wâa jaàn daj? What do you believe?

tûop

càw tûop wâa jaàn daj? How did you answer?
thǎam
càw thǎam wān jām ᵀaj?

hùusýk
càw hùusýk wān jām ᵀaj?

sōnsǎj
càw sōnsǎj wān jām ᵀaj?

thúaj
càw thúaj wān jām ᵀaj?

M-3
lỳan, myan
khōj hùu lỳan myan láaw

kaan myan
khōj hùu lỳan kaan myan

sōnkhaām
khōj hùu lỳan sōnkhaām

pūuk, khāw
khōj hùu lỳan kaan pūuk
khāw

lìan, sāt
khōj hùu lỳan kaan lìan
sāt

to question
What did you ask?
feel
How do you feel about that?
suspect
What did you suspect?
predict, guess
What did you predict?

about, story, matter; city, country
I know about Laos.

politics
I know about politics.

war
I know about war.

grow, raise; rice
I know about growing rice.

feed, nourish, raise; animal
I know about raising animals.
C-1

A. càw khít wàā láaw si māā bōō? Do you think he will come?
B. khɔj khít wàā láaw si māā I think he will come.

C-2

A. càw khâwcaj wàā jàndaj How did you understand it?
B. khɔj khâwcaj wàā láaw sī bōō māā I understood he was not coming

C-3

A. càw hùū njān? What do you know?
B. khɔj hùū lýaŋ myaŋ láaw I know about Laos.

NOTES

1) Verbs of saying, thinking, etc. frequently have sentences as complements; when they do, wàā occurs obligatorily as a connective:

khɔj khít wàā láaw bōō māā 'I didn't think he was coming.'
láaw hùū wàā càw bōō sàbaaj 'He knew you were very ill.'
làaaj
2) jaan dai 'what, how, in what way' is the usual question form with sentences like those above:

Q: câw tôp waa jaan dai? 'What did you answer?'
A: khâj tôp waa aw paj pâ? 'I said, take it over there and leave it.'

3) Although lýâng 'story, matter' is a noun, it functions somewhat like a preposition in English when it occurs after huu 'to know (a fact)', thus huu lýâng myâng láaw (lit. know matter Laos) 'to know about Laos'.

4) kaan is a Noun formative. Noun compounds with kaan are 'action nominals', i.e. they refer to actions and correspond roughly to the -ing form of the verb as in Singing songs is fun. kaan pûuk khâw 'Growing rice', kaan lân sat 'Raising animals', etc.

5) khît 'to think' is sometimes pronounced khît.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

   (a) khâj khît wâa câw míi khúam sôncaj _______ myâng láaw
       (I thought you had some interest in Laos.)

   (b) láaw _____________ câo hêt njân dîi
       (He doesn't know what he should do (what would be good to do)).

   (c) khoj _____________ pîi nîi aahâan câo phés njîn fîk
       (I heard that food will become a little more expensive this year.)

Answers: 1(a) lýâng (b)bôô huu wâa (c)dai njîn wâa

287
(d) phùak nāk-hiān thǎam khâj _______ jūu nāj mān láaw
(The students asked me about raising animals in Laos.)

(e) khâj hùusýk wāa láaw _______ nāj lỳān nī paandaj
(I don't feel he is very interested in this matter.)

(f) khâcâw _______ láaw pen thânhân wíatnâam nỳa.
(They suspect he is a North Vietnamese soldier.

(g) láaw hùu lỳân kaan mān tè bāw láaw bôc hùu _______
(He knows politics but he doesn't know war.)

(h) _________ láaw ât cá' bôc hùu lỳân kaan lâñ sat
dīi paandaj
(The villagers suspect that he may not know much about raising animals.)

(i) khâj bôc _________ thǎam láaw phoâ wāa láaw bôc hùu
lỳân nī
(I don't want to ask him because he doesn't know anything about this.)

(j) (j) láaw ______ bôc dâj ______ láaw bôc mīi weelâa
(He was unable to answer that he didn't have time.)

Answers: (d) lỳân kaan lâñ sât (e) bôc sòncaj (f) sòncaj wāa
(g) lỳân sònkhâam (h) sâaw bāan sòncaj wāa (i) jâak
(j) tòn... wāa
CYCLE 63

M-1

njàak

khôj khít wāā njàak lāaj to be difficult, hard

I think it's very difficult.

sáðùak
to be convenient

khôj khít wāā sáðùak lāaj I think it's very convenient.

njûn, njûn njàak
to be confused; to be complicated and difficult

khôj khít wāā njûn njàak lāaj I think it's very complicated.

kandaan
to be dangerous (as of environment)

khôj khít wāā kandaan lāaj I think it's very dangerous.

pôot, pháj
to be free from, danger

khôj khít wāā pôot pháj lāaj I think it's very safe.

sòok, diì
luck; good, well

khôj khít wāā sòok diì lāaj I think it's very good luck.

M-2

njàak boo? Is it difficult?
sáðùak boo? Is it convenient?
sá?áat boo? Is it clean?
pýan boo? Is it dirty?
phéén boo? Is it expensive?
thûyk boo? Is it cheap?
M-3

sɔɔj
mán njàak lǎaj láaw cỳŋ
hâj khácàw màa sɔɔj

phāk
mán sàdûak lǎaj láaw cỳŋ
jâak màa phāk jūu nètresn

khɔɔ, njàaj, bɔɔn, ṭyn
mán njùŋ njàak lǎaj láaw
cỳŋ khɔɔ njàaj pàj bɔɔn
ṭyn

sian
mán kandaan lǎaj láaw
cỳŋ bɔɔ sian

tɔɔŋkaan, thāhāan
mán pɔɔtphàj lǎaj láaw
cỳŋ bɔɔ tɔɔŋkaan thāhāan

sỳy, tık, sèsp
mán sèsp lǎaj láaw cỳŋ
sỳy tık.

M-4

wǐák
wǐák nèmes njàak bɔɔ?

help, assist
It's so difficult he let
them come help.

stay (temporary)
It's so convenient he wants
to come stay here.

ask, move, place, other
The situation is so mixed
up he wants to move to
another place.

to take a risk
The situation is so dangerous
he doesn't risk it.

need, soldier
The situation is so safe he
doesn't need any soldiers.

buy; more, again; delicious
It was so delicious he
bought more.

task, work
Is this job difficult?
hônhsèm, dâjhâp
phâk jûu hônhsèm nîi
dâjhâp knhâam sâmûak bôo?

panhâa
panhâa nîi njûn njàak bôo?

sîiwît, thên, phûu
sîiwît jûu thên phûu
kandaan bôo?

khêêt, pôtpôj
khêêt pôtpôj nîi pôt
phâj bôo?

aahân
aahân nîi sès pô bôo?

hotel, receive
Does this hotel have all
the conveniences?

problem, trouble
Is this problem complex?

life, on, mountain
Is life in the mountains
dangerous?

area, liberate
Is this liberated area safe?

food
Is this food delicious?

This work is so complicated
and difficult he had them
come help.

This hotel affords so many
coveneiences he likes to
stay here.

The work here is so complicated
he asked to move to another
place.

Life in the mountains is so
dangerous he doesn't want
to risk it.

M-5
wlâk nîi njàak lâaj làaw
cûn hâj knâcâw màa sôj

hônhsèm nîi hâj knhâam
sâmûak lâaj làaw cûn jâak
màa phâk jûu nîi

wlâk nîi njûn jàak lâaj
làaw cûn kncô njàaj paj
bôên yûn

sîiwît jûu thên phûu kandaan
lâaj làaw cûn bôê jâak sìaŋ

291
khêet pótpǒj nli pǒotpháj
lǎaj láaw cyn bǒo tǒonkaan
thǎhǎan

khánǒm nli sèsp lǎaj láaw
cyn cá° sỳy fik

This liberated area is so safe he doesn't need any soldiers.

This cake is so delicious he'll buy some more.

C-1

A. sáduək bǒo?
B. khôj khít wάα sáduək lǎaj.

Is it convenient?
I think it's very convenient.

C-2

A. aahǎan nli sèsp bǒo?
B. aahǎan nli sèsp lǎaj láaw
cyn cá° sỳy fik

Is this food delicious?
This food is so delicious he'll buy some more.

C-3

A. wlógica nli njàak lǎaj láaw
cyn hâj khácàw máa sǒți,
meēn bǒo?
B. meēn lèsəw, wlógica nli njàak
lǎaj láaw cyn hâj khácàw máa sǒți

This work is so difficult that he had them come and help, didn't he?

That's right, this work is so difficult that he had them come and help.
A. pen njaak laaw cyen haj
   kha-cau ma saa s33j?
   Why did he have them come to help?

B. laaw haj kha-cau ma saa s33j
   pho-waa wiak ni ni njaak laaj
   He had them come to help because this work is very difficult.

---

NOTES

1) The Subject is not expressed in Lao when the reference is to a general situation, except in certain situations:

   Q: kandaan booo?
   'Is (it) dangerous?'

   A: b33 kandaan laaj
   '(It) isn't very dangerous.'

   In more complex sentences man 'it' must be used:

   man njaak laaj laaw cyen haj
   kha-cau ma saa s33j
   'It's so difficult he let them come help.'

2) The So + Adjective + that + Sentence construction in English is expressed in Lao by:

   \[ V_s + \text{laaj} + \text{NP (subject)} + \text{cyen}... \]

   njaak laaj laaw cyen

   (It is difficult very he then...)

   'It's so difficult that he...'

293
The such + Adjective + NP + that + S construction is expressed in Lao:

\[ \text{NP} + V_s + \text{lāaj} + \text{NP (Subject)} + cỳŋ... \]

\text{wlak} \hspace{1cm} \text{nâasŏncaj} \hspace{1cm} \text{lāaj} \hspace{1cm} \text{lāaw} \hspace{1cm} cỳŋ

(work \hspace{1cm} interesting \hspace{1cm} very \hspace{1cm} he \hspace{1cm} then...)

'such interesting work that he...')

**APPLICATION**

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

   (a) lāaw khît wāā wlak nìi njàak lāaj láaw cỳŋ jàak hàj câw sūj lāaw

   (b) khâj khêopcaj lāaj lāaj thîi câw hàj khwâam sá̋dkak

   (c) lāaw nìi wlak nṳ̀ŋ lāaj láaw cỳŋ bōō hûu wāā câ? hêt njân kōn

   (d) khâcâw bōō jàak nāŋ kàj láaw phòwāā khŷn nùŋ láaw bōō sâ̋atăt

   (e) lāaw khît wāā láaw sō̋k dîi lāaj phòwāā thâhâan wîatkôn bōō hĕn láaw

---

**Answers:**
1(a) He thinks the work here is so hard that he would like to have you help him. (b) I am very appreciative that you have made it convenient. (c) He had such complicated work to do that he didn't know what to do first. (d) They don't want to sit near him because his clothes are dirty. (e) He thought he was very lucky because the Viet Cong didn't see him.
Answers:  (f) The work at my office is not very convenient.  
(g) The soldiers wouldn't let us go because this path is not safe.  (h) Travelling in this area is very dangerous.  (i) Food is expensive because the country is in a very precarious (difficult and dangerous) situation.  (j) When going and coming are convenient everything is cheap.
M-1

sỳa

càw sỳa wāā láaw si sānā?  
sàn boo?

believe, trust

You believe that he will win,  
is that so?

sárúp (aw)

càw sárúp aw wāā láaw si  
sānā? sàn boo?

summarize, conclude

You conclude that he will win,  
is that so?

wāŋ

càw wāŋ wāā láaw si sānā?  
sàn boo?

hope

You hope that he will win,  
is that so?

káŋ

càw káŋ wāā láaw si sānā?  
sàn boo?

estimate, calculate, guess

You calculate that he will win,  
is that so?

făn

càw făn wāā láaw sānā?  
sàn boo?

to dream

You dreamed that he won,  
is that so?

thámnáaj

càw thámnáaj wāā láaw si  
sānā? sàn boo?

foretell

You foretell that he will win,  
is that so?

nāscaj

càw nāscaj wāā láaw si  
sānā? sàn boo?

to be sure, certain, confident

You are sure that he will win,  
is that so?
M-2

sānā?

wāa sān lēsw, khōj sēa wāa lāaw si sānā?

sēn, sēndāj

wāa sān lēsw, khōj sēa wāa lāaw si sēndāj

dāj khyn sān, sān

wāa sān lēsw, khōj sēa wāa lāaw si dāj khyn sān

dājhāp, sāmrēt

wāa sān lēsw, khōj sēa wāa lāaw si dājhāp khwāam sāmrēt

phāajphēs

wāa sān lēsw, khōj sēa wāa lāaw si dājhāp khwāam phāajphēs

sēntōk

wāa sān lēsw, khōj sēa wāa lāaw si sēntōk.

win

That's how I see it. I believe that he will win.

take an exam, pass an exam

That's the way I see it. I believe that he will pass the exam.

to be promoted, rank, grade, story, level

That's how I see it. I believe that he will be promoted.

receive, complete, to be successful

That's how I see it. I believe that he will be successful.

to be defeated

That's the way I see it. I believe that he will be defeated.

to fail an exam

That's how I see it. I believe that he will not pass the examination.
M-3
khīăn
khīăn cān sī li bōo?
write
You write it like this, huh?
tāt
tāt cān sī li bōo?
cut
You cut it like this, huh?
hōo
hōo cān sī li bōo?
wrap, pack
You pack it like this, huh?
pā’ wāj
pā’ wāj cān sī li bōo?
leave, abandon
You leave it like this, huh?
aw jōon kan khīn
aw jōon kan khīn cān sī li bōo?
to stack something up
You stack them up like this, huh?
kō’, kan
aw kō’ kan cān sī li bōo?
to hook, each other
You hook them together like this, huh?

M-4
khīt
khāj khīt wāā (cān) sān lēsw
think
I think so.
sāa
tō believe
lāaw sāa wāā (cān) sān lēsw
He believes it's that way.
sánhee
khácàw sánhee wāā (cāŋ) sán lèsw
paakôt
paakôt wāā (cāŋ) sán lèsw
hēn
khōj hēn wāā (cāŋ) sán lèsw
sānkhēet hēn
khōj sānkhēet hēn wāā (cāŋ) sán lèsw
to propose
That's what they proposed.
appear
It appears to be so.
see
That's how I see it.
observe, notice
That's what I have noticed.

C-1
A. cày sya wāā láaw si sēŋ dāj Boo?
B. êe, khōj sya wāā láaw si sēŋ dāj
Do you believe he will pass the exam?
Yes, I believe he will pass the exam.

C-2
A. cày thāmnāaj wāā láaw si dāj khṃn sān, sān Boo?
B. wāā sān lèsw, khōj thāmnāaj wāā láaw si dāj khṃn sān jāŋ nōn nōn
You predict that he will get promoted, is that so?
Yes, I predict that he will certainly be promoted.
C-3

A. chèw sàrúp aw wàaw jàñh dàj?  What have you concluded?
B. khèj sàrúp aw wàaw lâaw si sèn dàj  I concluded that he will pass the exam.

C-4

A. chèw sêy wàaw lâaw bôô màa sàn bôô?  You believed that he wasn't coming, huh?
B. èe, khèj sêy wàaw (câñ) sàn lèëw  Yes. That's what I believed.

C-5

A. chèw si khèyàn câñ sì böô?  You are going to write it like this, huh?
B. bôô, khèj si khèyàn câñ sàn  No. I'm going to write it like that.

หมายความว่าจะมีการเรียนการสอน ตอนนี้ถ้ามีอะไรที่ผิดพลาด จึงต้องการ "จุ่มลง" และ "จุ่มขึ้น" ให้มาก ฉะนั้น "จุ่มลง?" และ "จุ่มขึ้น" ถ้ามีอะไรที่ผิดพลาดในเรื่องใด ๆ ให้จุ่มลงขึ้นให้มาก
NOTES

1) sàn 'like that' occurs with bọo after Sentences:

càw sỳa wāā láaw si ṕānā? sān bọo? 'You believe he will win, is that so?

sān bọo? is similar in usage to mēn bọo? except that mēn bọo? is used primarily to check the truth value of statements; whereas, sān bọo? is used to check an opinion or a guess, and hence is more informal. The usual answer to sān bọo? questions is wāā sān lēew which means 'That's how I see it' or 'That's what I had in mind'.

2) cān sān 'like that' and cān sīl 'like this' are used in statements and questions relating to how something is done.

khān cān sīl bọo? 'You write it like this, huh?

khān sān means 'In that case'. It is heard often in conversation.

APPLICATION

(a) lāaw bọo hīān khōj jāan wāā lāaw si sēŋtōk.
(b) khōj wāŋ wāā sān lēew
(c) lāaw sỳa wāā khwāam phānjānjaām jūū sāj khwāam sāmrēt jūū hān
(d) mīy khāynnīl càw fān wāā jāan daj?
(e) khōn lāaw sūan lāaj sỳa khwāam fān

Answers:  
1(a) He doesn't study. I'm afraid he'll fail.  
(b) I hope so. (c) He believes that where there is striving (trying) there will be success.  
(d) What did you dream last night? (e) Most Laos believe in dreams.
(f) hâw cá? sârûp aw bôô dâj wâa wîak láaw cá? bôô sâm mêt

(g) thâawââ fâaj nîn sânâ° ìik fâaj nîn koo cá? tôô phâajphêè

(h) láaw sîâ wââ sájsânâ° lê° khwáam phâajphêè pen khôn khûu kan

(i) piì kaaj nî lâaw sêntôk láaw nêcaj wââ piî nî lâaw si sêndâj

(j) wââ sân lêsw khêj sîâ wââ láaw si dâj khôn sâm

---

**Answers:**  
(f) We can not conclude that his work will fail.  
(g) If one side wins, the other side must lose.  
(h) He believes that victory and failure are pairs.  
(i) Last year he failed; he is certain he will pass this year.  
(j) Certainly, I believe he will be promoted.
CYCLE 65

M-1
láaw si paj tâlåat, lèsw láaw si paj hóoŋmño
He will go to the market, then he will go to the hospital.

láaw si kinkhâw lèsw láaw si paj hêt kaan.
He will eat, then he will go to work.

láaw si aân nǎŋ sỹy lèsw láaw si paj nóon.
He will read, then he will go to bed.

láaw si sâw mįaj lèsw láaw si aŋp nâm
He will rest, then he will take a shower.

M-2

kya, mũu
feed (animal), pig

láaw si kya mũu lèsw láaw si hêt njǎŋ?
He will feed the pigs, then what is he going to do?

tát, njâa
cut, grass

láaw si tát njâa lèswláaw si hêt njǎŋ?
He will cut the grass, then what is he going to do?

sâk khỳañnũŋ
wash clothes

láaw si sâk khỳañnũŋ lèsw láaw si hêt njǎŋ?
He will wash clothes, then what is he going to do?

jyym, něn
borrow, money

láaw si jyym něn lèsw láaw si hêt njǎŋ?
He will borrow money, then what is he going to do?
pian, pha puu to?

láaw si pian pha puu to?
lessw láaw si hêt njành?

change, table cloth
He will change the table cloth
then what is he going to do?

C-1

A. càw si hêt njành dès?

What are you going to do?

B. khâj si paj kinkhâw
lessw khâj si máa saw
mjàj

I will go to eat, then I will
come to rest.

C-2

A. càw si aān nānșy lèsèw
càw si hêt njành?

You will read, then what will
you do?

B. aān nānșy lèsèw khâj si
paj kya múū

After reading I will go feed
the pigs.
NOTES

1) In the construction \( S^1 + \text{lèsw} + S^2 \) (lāaw si paj tālâat lèsw lāaw si paj hōommö) 'He's going to the market and then to the hospital.') \( \text{lèsw} \) is a sentence connective and there is an indication that the activity referred to in the first sentence preceded that of the second sentence.

2) ɗée in a question indicates that the questioner is expecting a multiple answer.

Q: lāaw si hēt njān ɗée? What (things) is he going to do?
A: lāaw si aān nāñsṳ́y lèsw lāaw si paj kin khāw 'He'll read a book and then go eat.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) lāaw kin khāw lèsw lāaw si màa hāa cāw bōo?
(b) taam thāmmādaa mỳa cāw kin khāw lèsw cāw māk hēt njān?
(c) khācāw si paj bēŋ sīnēe lèsw khācāw si paj sāj ɗée?
(d) cāw si khāp lōt paj sỳy lèsw llaw sàaj māñn bōo?
(e) hīān lèsw cỳŋ hāk, bōō māñn hāk lèsw cỳŋ hīān

Answers: (a) Will he eat and then come to see you? (b) Usually when you have eaten, what do you like to do then? (c) They'll go to the movies and then where will they go? (d) You will drive straight ahead then you'll turn left, won't you? (e) Study then love; don't love and then study.
(f)  thàawām càw mýaj koo phákphōn sǎa, sáw mýaj lèsw cỳŋ paj hēt wîak tîk

(g)  mýa hàw liān mūu hàw tòon kya mān hâj ñIm lèsw hàw cá? dàj láakháa dîi

(h)  láaw si piān phāa puu tó? lèsw láaw cá? paj khuākin

(i)  thàawām càw jàak míi hýan càw âat cá? tòon jyym nën càak thanāakháan

(j)  láaw si tát njàa lèsw láaw si paj âap nàm

Answers:  (f) If you're tired, rest; when you're rested, go back to work.  (g) When we raise pigs, we must feed them full, then we'll get a good price (for them).  (h) She'll change the tablecloth then she'll go cook.  (i) If you want to have a house, you may have to borrow money from the bank.  (j) He'll cut the grass and then go take a bath.
CYCLE 66

M-1

kûat, bêŋ

khôj njân bûn than dâj
kûat bêŋ

check; look at

I haven't got around to checking it yet.

sâk, khûân nûn

khôj njân bûn than dâj
sâk khûân nûn

wash (cloth only), clothes

I haven't got around to washing clothes yet.

pês

khôj njân bûn than dâj pês

translate

I haven't got around to translating it yet.

khûân, cótmâaj

khôj njân bûn than dâj
khûân cótmâaj

write, letter (epistle)

I haven't got around to writing the letter yet.

sôn

khôj njân bûn than dâj
sôn cótmâaj

send

I haven't got around to mailing the letter yet.

sûksâa

khôj njân bûn than dâj
sûksâa bêŋ

study

I haven't got around to studying yet.
M-2
á̄t, pátuu
  càw á̄t pátuu lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you close the door yet?
khǎj
  càw khǎj pátuu lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you open the door yet?
là̄n̄, mỳ̄
  càw là̄n̄ mỳ̄ lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you wash your hands yet?
swǎːj, nāa
  càw swǎːj nāa lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you wash your face yet?
thǔu, khěw
  càw thǔu khěw lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you brush your teeth yet
wǐi, phõm
  càw wǐi phõm lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you comb your hair yet?
tyan
  càw tyan khàcàw lès̄w lũy njang?
  Did you warn them yet?

M-3
māa lès̄w
  Yes, (... already came.)
sáw lès̄w
  Yes, (... already stoped.)
mốt lès̄w
  Yes. (... already gone. 'finished!')
njän

Not yet.

to chat, talk; with

Did you get a chance to chat with him?

to meet, find

Did you get a chance to meet her?

see, result

Were you able to see any results (in the time available)?

to join, participate, attend; ceremony

Did you get to the ceremony in time to participate?

to hear a sermon

Did you get a chance to hear the sermon?

read; only, but; book

I was able to read only two books (in the time available).
wàw, nám, khám
khøj thán dàj wàw nám láaw
tèx sôn sàam khám

mìót fáj, mâj
khøj thán dàj mìót fáj kùn
màn sì mâj hýan

cáp myy, káp { pâj
mâa
khøj thán dàj cáp myy káp
phën kùn phën sì káp pâj

speak, with, along; word
I had a chance to speak
only 2 or 3 words with him.
to put out a fire, burn
I was able to put out the
fire before the house
burned down.
to shake, hand, return
I had a chance to shake
hands with him before he
returned.

C-1
A. càwát pátuu lèsw lỳy njáŋ?
B. át lèsw

Did you close the door yet?
Yes.

C-2
A. càw khỳán cótmáaj lèsw
lỳy njáŋ?
B. njáŋ.

Did you write the letter
yet?
Not yet.

C-3
A. càw làaŋ myy lèsw lỳy
njáŋ?
B. làaŋ lèsw, khøj làaŋ myy
khøj lèsw

Did you wash your hands
yet?
Yes, I've already washed
my hands.
C-4

A. càw thán dàj phòc káp láaw bòo?

B. thán, khạj thán dàj phòc káp láaw kôn láaw cá? káp paj

C-5

A. láaw kyp bờ dàj wàw nám khàcàw mèn bòo?

B. mèn lèe, láaw thán dàj wàw nám khàcàw tèe sǒn sắm khám

Did you get to meet him?

Yes, I got to meet him before he returned.

He almost didn't get to talk to them, isn't that so?

That's right. He only got to say 2 or 3 words to them.

NOTES

1) thán dàj means 'to have been able to do something in the available time'. It may occur in the negative with the meaning 'not to have got something done when it was supposed to have been done.'

khạj thán dàj mọt fáj kôn mán si màj hýan

'I was able to put out the fire before the house burned down.'

khạj njàn bòc thán dàj sàn pym càw

'I haven't got your book read yet.'

khạj thán dàj sàn pym tèe sǒn húa

'I've only got two books read.'
2) lèsw and nján are 'aspect words', i.e., they indicate the state of an action, whether it is completed (lèsw) or whether it remains incomplete (nján). nján is a preverb and occurs before bọ + VP:

khọj nján bọ than dàj pẹẹ 'I haven't got around to translating it yet.'

nján may occur alone in (a) responses to questions:

Q: càw wỳ phọm lèsw lỳy nján 'Have you combed your hair yet?'
A: nján 'Not yet.' Or (b) in parallel sentences like the question above.

3) When an affirmative sentence with lèsw and the negative form of the same sentence with nján are joined with lỳy 'or', the negative sentence is reduced to nján and follows the affirmative sentence:

Affirmative: càw thùu khês w lèsw 'You have brushed your teeth.'
Negative: càw nján bọ thùu 'You haven't brushed your teeth yet.'

When combined with lỳy: càw thùu khês w lèsw lỳy nján? 'Have you brushed your teeth yet or not?'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khọj ___________ khọj còmjà phịn khọj
   (I haven't had a chance to write a letter to my friend yet.)

(b) láaw khọj còmjà ______ tẹẹ láaw ______ than dàj sọn
   (He's written a letter, but he hasn't had a chance to mail it yet.)

Answers: 1(a)nján bọ than dàj (b)lèsw... nján bọ
(c) càw dàjḥàp khāw càak khācàw __________?
   (Have you had any news from them yet or not?)

(d) láaw njān bōɔ thān ___________ phōwàɔ láaw njān bōɔ thān dàj ___________
   (He hasn't been able to eat breakfast yet, because he's hasn't had a chance to wash his face yet.)

(e) láaw bōɔ míi wī láaw __________ njān bōɔ thān dàj wī phōm
   (He hasn't got a comb so he hasn't yet been able to comb his hair.)

(f) láaw pṣə náŋsyỳ hāj khācàw lès wāɔ khācàw __________ aw nēŋ hāj láaw
   (He has already translated the book for them, but they haven't yet got around to paying him.)

(g) càw bɔɔk láaw át pātuu ____________?
   (Have you told him to close the door yet or not?)

(h) thāwàɔ thāu __________ pṣə wāɔ làaw njān bōɔ thān māa
   (If the door isn't opened yet, that means he hasn't arrived yet.)

(i) khṣj njān bōɔ __________ khṣj phōwàɔ khṣj njān bōɔ míi wēelāa
   (I haven't yet been able to wash my clothes because I haven't had time yet.)

(j) láaw njān bōɔ thān dàj __________ khṣṇ khācàw
   (He hasn't yet been able to come inspect their work.)

Answers:  (c) lès w lỳy njān (d) kìn khāw sàw... swàŋ nāa (e) cyŋ  
(f) njān bōɔ thān dàj (g) lès w lỳy njān (h) njān bōɔ thān khṣj  (i) thān dàj sāk khỳan nūŋ (j) māa kùaŋ bēŋ wīlāk
M-1

panse, lthoodt

læaw pæns lthoodt lësw
lë[sw] bøo?

høj sámpháat

læaw høj sámpháat lësw
lë[sw] bøo?

nærp, nén

læaw nærp nén lësw lë[sw]
bøo?

sôypsuan

læaw sôypsuan lësw
lë[sw] bøo?

sôopsuan

læaw sôopsuan lësw
lë[sw] bøo?

banthyk, sña

læaw banthyk sña lësw
lë[sw] bøo?

màan, pyyn

læaw màan pyyn lësw
lë[sw] bøo?

fix, repair; bulldozer
Has he finished fixing the bulldozer?

to give an interview
Has he finished giving the interview?

to count, money
Has he finished counting money?

to investigate
Has he finished the investigation?

to interrogate
Has he finished the interrogation?

to record, sound, voice
Has he finished recording?

to dismantle, disassemble
Has he finished taking the gun apart?
M-2

lèsw lèsw

Yes, (he has) finished.

bōo, njāŋ bōo lèsw

No, (he has) not finished yet.

njāŋ, njāŋ bōo lèsw

Not yet, (he has) not finished yet.

M-3

átsǐañ

to record sound

láaw átsǐañ lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished recording.

èe

to decorate

láaw èe hỳan lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished decorating the house.

thǎañ, pāa

to clear (a forest), forest

láaw thǎañ pāa lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished clearing the wood.

thǎañ, nāa

to plow, a plow, rice field

láaw thǎañ nāa lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished plowing the rice field.

kiaw, khāw

to cut (with a sickle), rice

láaw kiaw khāw lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished harvesting the rice.

fàat

to strike, slap, flail

láaw fàat khāw lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished threshing the rice by hand.

khàat

to harrow

láaw khàat nāa lèsw lè[sw]

He has finished harrowing the rice field.
M-4

tam
lāaw tam khâw njàn bû
lèsw

hūṅ, súk
lāaw hūṅ khâw njàn bû
súk

nûŋ
lāaw nûŋ khâw njàn bû
súk

to pound (in a mortar)

He hasn't finished polishing the rice.

cook by boiling; to be cooked, ripe

He hasn't finished cooking the rice.

cook by steaming

He hasn't finished cooking the (sticky) rice.

M-5

lĕm, sŏc
lĕm sŏc lèsw lè[sw]
lāaw si hêt njàŋ?

wǐl, nûŋ khỳâŋ
wǐl phôm lèsw lè[sw]
lāaw si nûŋ khỳâŋ bôc?

sharpen, sharp, crayon

What is he going to do after he finishes sharpening the pencils?

comb, get dressed

Is he going to get dressed after he finishes combing his hair?

C-1

A. càw peen lót lèsw lè[sw] bôc?

Have you finished fixing your car?

B. lèsw lèsw

Yes, I have.
C-2

A. câw màañ pyyn câw lèew lè[səw] bʊo?
   Have you finished taking your gun apart?

B. bɔɔ, njάŋ bɔɔ lèew
   No, I haven't finished yet.

C-3

A. câw âan cótm້aj lèew lè[səw] bʊo?
   Have you finished reading the letter?

B. njάŋ, njάŋ bɔɔ lèew
   No, I haven't finished yet.

C-4

A. câw kǔat pỳm lèew lè[səw] bʊo?
   Have you finished checking the book?

B. əə, kʰį́ kǔat pỳm lèew lè[səw]
   Yes, I have finished checking the book.

C-5

A. lάaw ɲŋ khâw sũk lèew bʊo?
   Has he finished cooking the rice?

B. bɔɔ, lάaw ɲŋ khâw njάŋ bɔɔ sũk
   No, he hasn't finished cooking the rice.

C-6

A. khǔakin lèew lè[səw]lάaw si hét njάŋ?
   What is he going to do when he finishes cooking?

B. khǔakin lèew lè[səw] láaw si əən hâw máa kin khâw
   When he finishes cooking he will call us to the table.
NOTES

1) ลีzw as an Aspect particle indicating 'action completed at a particular time' and as a secondary verb meaning 'to complete some activity' may occur in one sentence, thus

ล้าw ปีน ล่อง ลีzw ลีzw  'He has already finished making repairs on the car.'

In normal speech the second ลีzw occurs in reduced form as ลี.

2) The response to ... ลีzw ลี[zw] บóo? questions may be:

Question: ค้าw ปีน ล่อง ค้าw ลีzw ลีzw บóo?  'Have you finished fixing your car yet?'

Affirmative
Response: (a) ลีzw ลี[zw]  'Yes, I have.'
(b) บóo, ฮัจ ปีน ล่อง ลีzw ลีzw  'Yes, I've finished making the repairs to my car already.'

Negative: (a) บóo, นีเจน บóo ลีzw  'No, I haven't finished yet.'
(b) นีเจน, นีเจน บóo ลีzw  'No, I haven't finished yet.'

3) VP + ลีzw ลีzw corresponds closely in meaning to English past participle constructions 'having...ed', etc. When VP + ลีzw ลีzw precedes NP + VP, there is an indication that the action referred to in the initial VP occurred before that in the second VP. Compare English and Lao:

English: having done his work, he went to bed (or) After he did...

Lao: ฮัท วิลำ ลีzw ลีzw, ล้าw บฟ น่อน

318
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) thàaŋ _____ dút _____ phān cỳŋ bọ İlk hâj lôt thìaw
   (The road is not yet completed so they don't let cars pass through.)

(b) mỳa njíŋ _____ phùak thählān phảa kan màŋ pyyn ńsk sët lë sâj näm mán
   (When the firing is over, the soldiers as a group take their guns apart and oil them simultaneously.)

(c) phọỳ náa thähl nåa __________ láaw cỳŋ __________ thán khàat
   (The farmer hasn't finished plowing so he hasn't started harrowing yet.)

(d) mỳa kìaw khâw __________ phùak phọỳ náa phâa kan fàat khâw
   (When the harvesting is done, the farmers as a group knock the heads off the rice stalks.)

(e) mỳa wèl lâa __________ mëh khâa nàp bâŋ gêŋ khôn lâaw
   (When everything is sold out, the female vendor counts her money [to see how much she took in]).

(f) thâawâa láaw hêt wìak nìi __________ láaw sì bọ İlk mỳa hýán
   (If he hasn't finished doing this work, he will not go home.)

Answers: 1(a)nján ... bọ İlk lèsw (b)lèsw (c)nján bọ İlk lèsw ...
nján bọ İlk (d)lèsw lèsw (e)khâaj khôn mót lèsw (f)bọ İlk lèsw

319
(g) phēa cā? hēt nāa phēn tôlô thăm phāt, _______ phēn cūn aw thāj màa thāj
(In order to farm one has to clear the forest; once the forest is cleared, one brings a plough in and ploughs [the land]).

(h) làn cāk sōpsūn ________ tamlūat koo pō J khācāw kā phān
(After the interrogation is completed, the police lets them go home.)

(i) sōpsūn __________, njān cā? tôlô mīl kān bān thēk fēk
(All aspects of the interrogation haven't been completed yet, there still are more tape recordings that have to be made.)

(j) mā ëe hỳān ________ làaw sī sēn múū màa kīn lān
(When the decoration of the house has been finished, she will invite guests in to eat.)

Answers: (g) thān phāt lēw (h) lēw lēw (i) lēw njān bō pō lēw (j) lēw lēw

320
M-1

**héstwìak**

>càw héstwìak hâj phäß?

work

Who do you work for?

**khìan pỳ̀m**

>càw khìan pỳ̀m hâj phäß?

write the book for

Who do you write the book for?

**khâp lṑt**

>càw khâp lṑt hâj phäß?

drive the car

Who do you drive the car for?

**pùk hỳàn**

>càw pùk hỳàn hâj phäß?

build the house

Who do you build the house for?

**tàt pò̀m**

>càw tàt pò̀m hâj phäß?

cut the hair

Who did you cut the hair for?

**fàw hỳàn**

>càw fàw hỳàn hâj phäß?

watch the house

Who do you watch the house for?

**phỳm nānsỳ̀y**

>càw phỳm nānsỳ̀y hâj phäß?

type the letter

Who do you type the letter for?

M-2

**pàj aw**

going to get

khôj si pàj aw hâj láaw

I am going to get (it) for him.

**sòn nānsỳ̀y**

send the letter

khôj si sòn nānsỳ̀y hâj láaw

I will send the letter for him.
psen lōt
khôj si psen lōt hâj láaw I will fix the car for him.
làan lōt
khôj si làan lōt hâj láaw I will wash the car for him.
khuakin
khôj si khuakin hâj láaw I will cook for him.
mìan pûm
khôj si mìan pûm hâj láaw I will arrange the books for him.

M-3
kúlîi
kúlîi si hêt njănh hâj càw? What is the coolie going to do for you?

khônsàj
khônsàj si hêt njănh hâj càw? What is the servant going to do for you?
saâmjà
saâmjà si hêt njănh hâj càw? What is the carpenter going to do for you?

léekhăanûkaan
léekhăanûkaan si hêt njănh hâj càw? What is the secretary going to do for you?
náajsáŋ

náajsáŋ si hêt njǎŋ hâj càw?

What is the mechanic going to do for you?

sáantátphōm

sáantátphōm si hêt njǎŋ hâj càw?

What's the barber going to do for you?

C-1

A. càw si pēŋ lôt hâj phâj?

Who are you going to fix the car for?

B. khēj si pēŋ hâj láaw

I will fix (the car) for him.

C-2

A. phâj si aw pāj hâj càw?

Who will take it for you?

B. khônsàj si aw pāj hâj khēj

The servant will take it for me.

C-3

A. náajsáŋ si hêt njǎŋ hâj càw?

What's the mechanic going to do for you?

B. láaw si pēŋlôt hâj khēj

He will fix the car for me.
NOTES

1) hâj in the construction VP + hâj + NP indicates that the activity referred to in VP is either done (a) for the benefit of, or (b) in place of the person(s) referred to in NP.

lâaw kháp lôt hâj khôj

'He drives for me (in place of me).'

lâaw tát phôm hâj khôj

'He cuts my hair (for my benefit).'

hâj has many other meanings but the most of them relate in some way to one or the other of the two categories stated above. hâj parallels English for in only a few instances.

2) hâj kan indicates that some activity is carried out for the mutual benefit of the parties participating in it. khúakin hâj kan 'They cook for each other'.

3) hâj + NP may contrast with een 'oneself' in use.

khôj sî khúakin hâj láaw phôwâa

'I'll cook for him, because he can't cook for himself.'

lâaw khúakin een bôô dàj

4) phâa kan + VP is used to indicate that all the members of a group engage in simultaneous and identical action.

phôô náa phâa kan fâat khâw

'All the farmers flail rice stalks at the same time.'

5) khâw occurs in informal usage for khácâw 'they'. It is commonly used with children. It may also be used for unidentified persons. phân is also used for 'they', but it is used only for persons of higher status. It also means 'he, she'.

324
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw wàw wāā láaw jàak màa hētwlāk ____________
   (He said he would like to come work for me.)

(b) khón kháplōt khôj si paj kháplōt ________ sǒn mỳy
   (My chauffeur will go drive for him two days.)

(c) phūak nāk-hīan bōk jàak sīa nǒn khāā tātphōm kháccaw
cyn tātphōm ____________
   (Students don't like to spend money on haircuts, so they
cut each other's hair.)

(d) lēekhānākaan bōk wāā láaw si phîm nānsīy ____________
mỳy nli
   (The secretary said she would finish typing the letter
for me today.)

(e) khôj si khūakin ____________ phōwāā láaw khūakin ____
    ____ bōk pen
   (I'll cook for her because she doesn't know how to cook
herself.)

(f) láaw pēn lōt bōk pen láaw cyn si cànn nāajsān ________
   (He doesn't know how to fix a car himself, so he will hire
a mechanic to come fix it for him.)

Answers: 1(a)hâj khôj (b)hâj láaw (c)hâj kan (d)hâj khôj
hâj lēew (e)hâj láaw... een (f)māa pēn hâj láaw
(g) sārmjàj si ____________ khôj koc bòc hùu
(I don't know what the carpenter is going to do for me either.)

(h) khôj si aw khôch nìi sâj lôt paj khâaj ____________
(I'll put these things in the car and go sell them for her.)

(i) déknôcj __________ lânj lôt __________ phôwâa khâw jâak hâj khôj phâa paj sün sát
(The children all pitch in and wash the car for me because they want me to take them to the zoo.)

(j) khôj bòc dîicaj njôon wàa sâaj tâtpôm tâtpôm _______
sân phôôôt
(I'm not happy due to the fact that the barber cut my hair too short.)

Answers: (g)hêt njân hâj khôj (h)hâj láaw (i)phâa kan...
hâj khôj (j)hâj khôj
M-1

hētkāan

khôj jâak hētkāan

tô work

I want to work.

mîi nên lâaj

khôj jâak mîi nên lâaj

tô have a lot of money

I want to have a lot of money.

lîn kîlāa

khôj jâak lîn kîlāa

tô engage in sport

I want to engage in sports.

tîi pînpōn

khôj jâak tîi pînpōn

play table tennis

I want to play table tennis.

lēn

khôj jâak lēn

tô run

I want to run.

hēn lâaj mîn

khôj jâak hēn lâaj mîn

tô see many cities

I want to see many cities.

fân phēn

khôj jâak fân phēn

tô listen to the song

I want to listen to the song.

M-2

mâa

khôj jâak hâj lâaw mâa

tô come

I want him to come.

jûu nâm khôj

khôj jâak hâj lâaw jûu

tô stay with me

I want him to stay with me.

nâm khôj
teəŋnáan
khôj jâak hâj láaw teəŋnáan
to get married
I want him to get married.

tâncaj hían
khôj jâak hâj láaw tâncaj hían
to concentrate on studying
I want him to concentrate on studying.

sâw sîup jaa
khôj jâak hâj láaw sâw sîup jaa
to stop smoking
I want her to stop smoking.

lèem hêtkaan
khôj jâak hâj láaw lèem hêtkaan
to begin working
I want him to begin working.

pen thāhâan
khôj jâak hâj láaw pen thāhâan
to become soldier
I want him to become soldier

M-3

nâajkhûu
nâajkhûu jâak hâj càw hêt njân?
What does the teacher want you to do?

rāthāabaan
rāthāabaan jâak hâj càw hêt njân?
the government
What does the government want you to do?
khúubaa

khúubaa jâak hâj càw hêt njân?

the monk
What does the monk want you to do?

(aàj) cua

(aàj) cua jâak hâj càw hêt njân?

the monk novice
What does the monk novice wants you to do?

déknòoj

déknòoj jâak hâj càw hêt njân?

the children
What do the children want you to do?

lùuk càw

lùuk càw jâak hâj càw hêt njân?

your children
What do your children want you to do?

C-1

A. càw jâak hêt njân?

What do you want to do?

B. khôj jâak fân phêên

I want to hear the songs.

C-2

A. càw jâak hâj khôj hêt njân?

What do you want me to do?

B. khôj jâak hâj càw jùu nâm lâaw

I want you to stay with him.
A. náajkhûu jâak hâj cày hêt njæñ?
   What does the teacher want you to do?

B. phôom jâak hâj khøj tâncaj hían
   He wants me to concentrate on studying.

---

NOTES

1) jâak + VP means 'to want, would like (to do something)'.

   khøj jâak míi nén láaj
   'I would like to have lots of money.'

   When the Subject of the sentence and the person performing the action are not the same person, jâak hâj + VP is used.

   khøj jâak hâj láaw pen náaj khúu
   'I want her to be a teacher.'

2) phôom kan means 'simultaneously' or 'at the same time'.

   khôt khít wâa khâçâw si bôô
   máa hût phôom kan
   'I don't think they will arrive simultaneously.'

3) ton 'oneself, itself, themselves' is used in place of láaw or khâçâw when the subject of the sentence and the person(s) referred to later are the same person:

   phôomèe thûk khôn koo jâak hâj lûuk khôn ton tâncaj hían nánsyôô
   'All parents would like to have their children concentrate on studying.' (phôomèe and ton refer to the same people.)
APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) aánjūp láaw njāŋ bōo thēŋ sip pēst pii tēē láaw kōo ____ hēt kaan lēsw
(She isn't 18 yet, but she would like to get a job.)

(b) láaw ____________ tēē wāa sūkhāphāap láaw bōo diī.
(He would like to engage in sports, but his health isn't good.)

(c) thāawāā phūū njāŋ __________ phūū njāŋ __________ khācāw
âat cā? bōo paj hōot __________
(If one person wants to walk and another wants to run, they may not arrive at the same time.)

(d) Khāj __________ láaw māa hēn khwāam cārēēn khōōŋ bàan māāŋ
(I would like to have him come see the growth and progress in the country.)

(e) phūūmēē thūk khōōŋ tēēŋ kōo __________ lūuk khōōŋ ton
tāncaj hīān nāŋsīy
(Each individual parent would like to have his children concentrate on their studies.)

Answers: 1(a) jāak (b) jāak līn kīlāa (c) jāak njāŋ... jāak
lēWEEN... phōom kan (d) jāak hāj (e) jāak hāj
(f)  khâj wâñg ñìì laaw khâj cyñ ___________ sììëp jaa  
(I wish him well, so I would like to have him stop smoking.)

(g)  phùuṃmè phaâñkhôn ___________ tênhâan phya càö dâj  
mót khwâam pen huan  
(Some parents want their daughters to get married so as to  
get rid of worrying [about them]).

(h)  khâj ___________ laaw ___________ têñ paj njøën wâa laaw  
hîan njâñ bòu cóp  
(I would like to have him continue staying with me due to  
the fact that he hasn't finished his studies yet.)

(i)  lâthábaan ___________ pâsáason míì khwâam jãìì dil kin dil  
(The Government would like for the people to have a good  
standard of living.)

(j)  khûubaa ___________ àaj cua phânjáan jáam hâmhián aw khwâam  
$hùu$ (The monk told the novice to study hard to gain knowledge  

Answers:  
(f) jâak hâj laaw sáw (g) jâak hâj lùuksâaw khóøñ ton  
(h) jâak hâj... jãìì nám khâj (i) jâak hâj (j) bòok hâj  

332
CYCLE 70

M-1

khúakin
khôj hâj láaw khúakin hâj
(khôj)  I {had let her cook for me.
cook

phát kêep
khôj hâj láaw phát kêep hâj (khôj)
shine (my) shoes
I {had let him shine (my) shoes for me.

làañ thûaj sáam
khôj hâj láaw làañ thûaj sáam hâj (khôj)
wash dishes
I {had let him wash dishes for me.

tûím nânsûy
khôj hâj láaw tûím nânsûy hâj (khôj)
type the letter
I {had let her type the letter for me.

bên lûuk
khôj hâj láaw bên lûuk hâj (khôj)
watch the children
I {had let her watch the children for me.

fâw hýan
khôj hâj láaw fâw hýan hâj (khôj)
watches the house
I {had let him watch the house for me.
kháp lọt

càw si hâj phâj kháp lọt
hâj (càw)?

Who will you {have let} drive
for you?

làañ lọt

càw si hâj phâj làañ lọt
hâj (càw)?

wash the car

Who will you {have let} wash the
car for you?

kûat

càw si hâj phâj kûat
hâj (càw)?

check

Who will you {have let} check it
for you?

tèsm

càw si hâj phâj tèsm
hâj (càw)?

draw

Who will you {have let} draw it
for you?

càaj

càw si hâj phâj càaj
hâj (càw)?

pay

Who will you {have let} pay it
for you?

tàjfâj

càw si hâj phâj tàjfâj
hâj (càw)?

turn on

Who will you {have let} turn on
the light for you?

mèotfâj

càw si hâj phâj mèotfâj
hâj (càw)?

turn off

Who will you {have let} turn off
the light for you?
C-1

A. láaw si háj càw hēt njën̄ hâj (láaw)?
   What will he have you do for him.

B. láaw si háj khêj phát kēep hâj (láaw)
   He will have me shine shoes for him.

C-2

A. khâcâw si háj phēj bēn̄ lûuk hâj khacâw?
   Who will they have look after their children for them?

B. khâcâw si háj phýan bâan khâcâw bēn̄ hâj
   Their neighbor.

C-3

A. càw wârâ si háj láaw hēt njën̄ hâj càw?
   What were you going to have him do for you?

B. khêj wârâ si háj láaw phým nøn̄sy hâj khêj
   I was going to have him type letters for me.
NOTES

1) hâj frequently occurs twice in a sentence, once with the meaning 'on behalf of, for the benefit of' (benefactive meaning as in Cycle 68) and once with the meaning 'to have, let, cause (someone to do something)' (causative meaning as in Cycle 69):

khêj hâj láaw khúakin hâj (khêj)  'I had her cook for me.'

NP after hâj (benefactive) may be omitted if it has the same referent as NP (Subject), as in the example above and in this example:

phùak náaj khùu hâj láaw kháp lót hâj (kháecâw)  'The teachers let him drive for them.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English and check your answers:

(a) thâwâa láaw khúakin pen khêj si hâj láaw khúakin hâj khêj
(b) câw si hâj láaw bêŋ lûuk hâj câw boɔ?
(c) phêj si hêt wîak hâj phêj khêj koo njâŋ bôñ hûu thîa
(d) wêelâa câw bôñ jûu câw si hâj phêj fâw hîan hâj câw
(e) mûy wáan nî lâaw hâj déknòoj làaŋ lót hâj láaw, câw hûu boɔ láaw aw nôn hâj khêw thêmđaj?

Answers: (a) If she can cook, I will have her cook for me.
(b) Are you going to have her babysit for you?
(c) I have no idea yet who will work for who.
(d) When you're not home, who will you have watch the house for you?
(e) Yesterday he had the children wash the car for him, do you know how much money he gave them?
Answers:  
(f) I would like for him to come check the motor of my car for me because my car isn't running very well at present.
(g) He has never had other people work for him before, because he doesn't trust them.
(h) If you want her to run errands for you, you have to buy her a car.
(i) I'll have him sell these things for them because they don't have time to go sell (them) themselves.
(j) Having other people contact the owner of the land may not get as good results as if we went to contact (him) ourselves.

II. Translate the above English sentences back into Lao and check your answers. Since your translation may differ at some points from the original, you should check with the instructor about these differences.
CYCLE 71

M-1

tó?

tó? n̄i ḥét dùaj nj̍ãŋ?

What is this table made of?

wātcánáanũkom

wātcánáanũkom ḥa n̄i ḥét dùaj nj̍ãŋ?

What is this dictionary made of?

tūu

tūu n̄i ḥét dùaj nj̍ãŋ?

What is this cabinet made of?

d̄ọk fâj f̣àa

d̄ọk fâj f̣àa ḥet dùaj nj̍ãŋ?

What is the light bulb made of?

s̄aj s̄õo

s̄aj s̄õo n̄i ḥet dùaj nj̍ãŋ?

What is this chain made of?

s̄abuu

s̄abuu ḥet dùaj nj̍ãŋ?

What is soap made of?

M-2

s̄ạjạs̄õọj

s̄ạjạs̄õọj n̄i ḥet dùaj khám

This chain is made of gold.

s̄ạj ẹw

s̄ạj ẹw n̄i ḥet dùaj nãŋ

This belt is made of leather.
pǒnįm

pǒnįm nì hêt dùaj kèew

phāthāat

phāthāat nì hêt dùaj nên

mlittāt, lék

mlittāt nì hêt dùaj lék

sāajfāj, thōndonŋ

sāajfāj nì hêt dùaj
thōndonŋ

cōk, plastík

cōk nì hêt dùaj plastík

sābuu, khyan kéémíi

sābuu hêt dùaj khyan
khéémíi

window

This window is made of glass.

tray

This tray is made of silver.

scissors, iron

These scissors are made of iron.

wires, copper

These wires are made of copper.

cups, plastic

These cups are made of plastic.

soap, chemical substances

Soap is made of chemical substances.

M-3

thūŋ, cīa, thūncīa

thūŋ thīh hêt dùaj cīa
èen wāā thūncīa

sỳak, nīlōŋ, sỳaknīlōŋ

sỳak thīh hêt dùaj nīlōŋ
èen wāā sỳaknīlōŋ

flag, paper, paper flag

A flag which is made of paper is called a paper flag.

rope, nylon, nylon rope

A rope which is made of nylon is called a nylon rope.
khỳannûŋ, khônsât

khỳannûŋ thîŋ hêt dùaj
khônsât èen wâa
khỳannûŋkhônsât
clothes, fur
Clothes which are made of
fur are called fur clothes.

tiāŋ, màj, tiānmâj

tiāŋ thîŋ hêt dùaj màj
èen wâa tiānmâj
bed, wood, wooden bed
A bed which is made of
wood is called a wooden bed.

M-4

kêep, jaan

hâw èen kêep thîŋ hêt dùaj
jaan wâa jaan daj?
shoes, rubber
What do we call shoes that
are made of rubber?

mûo, din

hâw èen mûo thîŋ hêt dùaj
din wâa jaan daj?
pot, earth
What do we call pots that
are made of earth(enware)?

phûaphêe, màj

hâw èen phûaphêe thîŋ hêt
dùaj màj wâa jaan daj?
scarves, silk
What do we call scarves that
are made of silk?

C-1

A. tûu nûaj nîi hêt dùaj
njàŋ?
What is this table made of?

B. tûu nûaj nîi hêt dùaj
lêk
This table is made of metal
(iron).
C-2

A. hāw èen thŭn thī hēt 
duaj cla wāa jān daaj?  What do we call flags that
    are made of paper?
B. hāw èen thŭn thī hēt 
duaj cla wāa thŭncla  We call them paper flags.

C-3

A. sỳakmāj mēn sỳak thī 
hēt duaj màj, mēn boō?  Silk rope is rope that
    is made of wood, is that
B. bōō mēn, sỳakmāj mēn  right?
sỳak thī hēt duaj màj  No that's not right, silk
    rope is rope made of silk.

C-4

A. sỳakmāj mēn sỳak thī 
hēt duaj njān?  What's a silk rope made of
B. sỳakmāj mēn sỳak thī  silk?
hēt duaj màj  Silk rope is rope made of

ข้ามผ่ำะดงนะภูงคุณ อั้นไถ่ดึงด่อยค่ำ? ละจะคิ่มอึมม่ำย่ำ财物? ออกใจมั่นคงกับภูมิ

ที่จะคิ้วอึมคำควำมย่ำค่ำ? เช่น: ไทที่มีกี่แกลวะคะค้ำย่ำ? คิ่มะแงะก็ค่ำย่ำ.
NOTES

1) hēt duâj means 'to be made of'. The response to the question ... hēt duâj njàn 'What is...made of?' is some type of material, such as glass, paper, iron, etc.

Q: tûu nlig hēt duâj njàn? 'What is this cabinet made of?'
A: tûu nlig hēt duâj màj 'This cabinet is made of wood.'

2) thìi 'that, which, who' functions as a Noun Phrase substitute and as a connective in NP+thìi+VP constructions: thûn thìi hēt duâj cìa 'A flag (that is) made of paper'.

3) hāw èen ... wàa jāaŋ daŋ? (Lit. how do we call) 'What do we call...?' is used in requesting the name of something hāw èen kēep thìi hēt duâj jāaŋ wàa jāaŋ daŋ? 'What do we call shoes that are made of rubber?'

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences.

(a) wàsàntaa hēt duâj ____________________________
   (Eye glasses are made of glass.)

(b) tô? hēt duâj ____________________________ 15? lék
   (Tables are made of metal and wood.)

(c) móon hēt duâj ____________________________
   (Watches are made of silver.)

(d) lōt ____________________________ lék
   (Cars are made of iron.)

Answers: (a) kēew (b)màj (c)nèn (d)hēt duâj
(e) jaŋ lót hét dùaj ______________________________
(Car tires are made of rubber.)

(f) syak thii hét dùaj mǎj èen wāă ______________________
(Rope that is made of silk is called silk rope.)

(g) pátuu thii __________________ èen wāă pátuu kēsw
(Doors that are made of glass are called glass doors.

(h) kātāa thii hét dùaj wāaj èen wāă ______________________
(Baskets that are made of rattan are called rattan baskets.)

(i) kēep __________________ èen wāă kēep nān.
(Shoes that are made of leather are called leather shoes.)

(j) thōn thii hét dùaj plaastīk ______________ thōn plaastīk
(Bags that are made of plastic are called plastic bags.)

2) Answer the following questions:

(a) hāw èen mōo thii hét dùaj thōn aseen wāă jān daj? ______
(What do we call a pot that is made of copper?)

(b) hāw èen wēsn thii hét dùaj khām wāă jān daj? ______
(What do we call rings that are made of gold?)

(c) hāw èen pāakkaa thii hét dùaj plaastīk wāă jān daj??
_________(What do we call pens that are made of plastic?)

Answers: 1(e) jaŋ (f) syak mǎj (g) hét dùaj kēsw (h) kātāa wāaj
(1) thii hét dùaj nān (j) èen wāă 2(a) mōo thōn aseen
(b) wēsn khām (c) pāakkaa plaastīk
(d) háw èen kápaw thì hêt dùaj nán waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call bags that are made of leather?)

(e) háw èen hỳan thì hêt dùaj màj phàaj waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call houses that are made of bamboo?)

(f) háw èen tàn lì thì hêt dùaj wàaj waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call a chair that is made of rattan?)

(g) háw èen sáam thì hêt dùaj lék waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call a dish that is made of metal?)

(h) háw èen thòn thàw thì hêt dùaj fâaj waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call socks that are made of cotton?)

(i) háw èen sỳa thì hêt dùaj màj waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call a blouse that is made of silk?)

(j) háw èen sáam thì hêt dùaj cla waa jànn daj? __________
(What do we call plates that are made of paper?)

Answers: 2(d)kápaw nân (e)hỳan màj phàaj (f)tàn lì wàaj
(g)sáam lék (h)thòn thàw fâaj (i)sỳa màj (j)sáam cla
CYCLE 72

M-1

khăn

lááw khăn dùaj njăn?
Mathe did he write with?

tát

lááw tát dùaj njăn?
What does he cut (it) with?

dig

khút

lááw khút dùaj njăn?
What did he dig with?

mät

lááw mät dùaj njăn?
What did he tie with?

cross the river

khâam mëznăm

lááw khâam mëznăm dùaj
What did he cross the river

njăn?
with?

deentháan

lááw deentháan dùaj njăn?
How did he travel?

M-2

Cut, saw

tát, lyaj

khácàw si tát dùaj lyaj
They will cut with saps.

tie, rattan

mät, wáaj

khácàw si mät dùaj wáaj
They will tie (it) with rattan.

dig, hoe

khút, cók

khácàw si khút dùaj cók
They will dig with hoes.

345
khâam mǣnâm, thɔɔ̄mây
khâcâw si khâam mǣnâm
dùaj thɔɔ̄mây
deenthâaŋ, khỳāŋ bin
khâcâw si deen thâaŋ dùaj
khỳāŋ bin
thâj náa, thâj
khâcâw thâj náa dùaj thâj
pháaj hỳa, màj phâaj
khâcâw phâaj hỳa dùaj
màj phâaj
cross the river, logs
They will cross the river with logs.
travel, airplanes
They will travel with airplanes.
plow the rice field, plows
They plow the ricefield with plows.
paddle the boat, paddle
They paddle the boat with paddles.
C-1
A. câw si khỳān dùaj njàŋ?
What will you write with?
B. khǹj si khỳān dùaj pàakkàa
I will write with a pen.
C-2
A. làaw si tát màj dùaj cók,
He will cut wood with a hoe, mën bòo?
is that right?
B. bòb mën, làaw si tát màj
No, he will cut wood with dùaj lyaj
a saw.
NOTES

1) VP +  NSRange + NP (Instrument) is used to indicate what device or means is used to perform some activity:

khác.awt màj  NSRange lyaj

'They cut the wood with a saw.'

khác.awt si màt  NSRange wàaj

'They'll tie it up with rattan.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) láaw  NSRange mìi  ràngkkaa  láaw  cỳn  khjän  NSRange sëodam.

(b) din  jëw  nìi  khëxn  ràngj  cá?  khût   NSRange njëñ  koo  ràngj  vàj

(c) thàawàà  tát   NSRange lyaj-thámmààaa  ràngj  vàj  láaw  si  tát   NSRange lyaj-tát-lék

(d) kaan  deen  thààñ   NSRange lët  cãåk  wìànçàn  paj  hàa  lùàñ  phèbàñ  ràngj  pòotphjàj

(e) phèw  nàà  jëw  mjàñ  láaw  thjàj  nàà   NSRange thjàj  nòòj

(f) láaw  sòòk  hàa  hjà  ràngj  hèn  láaw  cỳn  khàam  mëù  nàm   NSRange thòòn  màj

Answers: 1(a)He didn't have a pen so he wrote with a pencil
(b)The earth here is too hard to be able to be dug with anything. (c)If it can't be cut with an ordinary saw, he will cut it with a hacksaw. (d)Traveling by car from Vientiane to Luang Prabang is not safe. (e)Rice farmers in Laos plow their fields with small plows. (f)He wasn't able to find a boat, so he crossed the river on a log.
(g) deen thaan duaj khyan bin waj kwaa kaan deenthaan duaj lott
(h) laaw bor huu waa cao mat dok maaj nii duaj njaj
(i) thaaawaa haw bor mii maaj-phaaj haw si toon phaan hya duaj myy
(j) laaw njaj bor huu waa diaw nii haw at sjan daaj duaj khyan
    at sjan

2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) laan khon kinkhaw duaj ____________________________
    (Some people eat with their hands.)

(b) khaj bor ____________________________ plaastik.
    (I wrapped it with sheets of plastic.)

(c) laaw aw nip saaj kan ____________________________ lek nip cia
    (He attached it with a paper clip.)

(d) laaw hap faj khaaw ____________________________
    (He received the news by radio.)

(e) yaj khaj cao deenthaan kip baan ____________________________
    (My older sister will return by train.)

Answers: 1(g) Traveling by plane is faster than by car. (h) He
didn’t know what he would tie up the flowers with. (i) If we
don’t have any paddles, we’ll have to paddle
the boat by hand. (j) He isn’t yet aware that now we
can record sound with a tape recorder.
2(a) myy (b) duaj phen (c) duaj (d) duaj withanjoo (e) duaj lott faj
(f) khôn ciin ................................. màj-thuû
(Chinese eat with chopsticks)

(g) khácàw khôn ............................... bûañ
(They stir it with a spoon.)

(h) sêt chèk đùaj ................................
(Wipe it off with a soft cloth.)

(i) njök lót khûn ............................... mée hëñ
(Raise the car with a jack.)

(j) dyñ .......................................... sább sôô
(Pull it with a chain.)

(k) màt đùaj ..................................
(Tie it with a rope.)

(l) thûu chèk ...................................
(Clean it with a brush.)

(m) ................................................. đùaj nàm jaa làañ pàak
(Wash out your mouth with mouth wash.)

(n) ................................................. đùaj kéêss
(Cook with gas.)

Answers: 2(f) kin khâw đùaj (g) đùaj (h) phâa sôñ sôñ (i) đùaj
(j) đùaj (k) sâyak (l) đùaj pëñ (m) làañ pàak (n) khûakin

349
(o)  

duaj lék khaj kápoon  
(Open it with a can opener.)

(p)  
láaw thỳk mät taa _______ phàa _______  
(His eyes were bound with a black cloth.)

(q)  
tháa __________________________________  
(Paint it with yellow paint.)

(r)  
sét thuaj sáam ________________________  
(Dry the dishes with a cloth.)

(s)  
phát ___________________________________  
(Polish it with a cloth.)

(t)  
tòok tápuu __________________________ khìon tìi  
(Drive the nail with a hammer.)

(u)  
tít taam bën ______________________ khỳñj leéèàa  
(Track it by radar.)

(v)  

léèn __________ kásjìe ________________  
(Run it on electrical current.)

(w)  

________________________ khwàam ót thón  
(Work with patience.)

(x)  

______________________ duaj khwàam pámàat  
(Don't drive carelessly.)

Answers: (o)khaj (p)duaj... sìì dam (q)duaj sìì lýañ (r)duaj phàa  
(s)duaj phàa (t)duaj (u)duaj (v)duaj... fájàà (w)hèèt  
wlak duaj (x)jìì khap lòët

350
CYCLE 73

M-1

dan-fáj
càw si sàj njăn dan-fáj? to make a fire

hóon, năn
càw si sàj njăn hóon năn? What will you use for making a fire?

to underlay, place beneath; sit

to control the flow, water

lābaaj, nàm
càw si sàj njăn lābaaj nàm? What will you use to sit on?

What will you use to control the water flow?

sāmlūat, bēn

càw si sàj njăn sāmlūat bēn? survey, inspect, look at, see

What will you use for inspecting?

lyak, māak màj

càw si sàj phañg lỳak māak màj? select, choose; fruit

Who will you use to select fruit?

to have one's meal

kinkhâw
càw si sàj njăn kinkhâw? What will you use to eat with?

to wrap around, hand

phăn, mỳy
càw si sàj njăn phăn mỳy? What will you use to wrap around your hand?

351
thāan
khôj si sàj thāan dān-fáj
charcoal
I'll use charcoal for making a fire.

cìa
khôj si sàj cìa hóon nān
paper
I'll use paper to sit on.

kēnssān
khôj si sàj kēnssān
binoculars
sāmluat bēŋ
I'll use binoculars for inspection.

dēknɔ̀ɔj
khôj si sàj dēknɔ̀ɔj lỳak
children
mâak māj
I'll use children to select fruit.

bùañ, sōm
khôj si sàj bùañ sōm
spoon, fork
kin khāw
I'll use a spoon and fork to eat with.

khýançák
khôj si sàj khýançák
machine, engine, motor
lābaaj nām
I'll use a machine for controlling the flow of the water.

phāa
khôj si sàj phāa phān mūy
cloth
I'll use a cloth to wrap around my hand.
C-1

A. càw si sàj njăŋ dan-fáŋ? What will you use for building fire?

B. khój si sàj thành dan-fáŋ I'll use charcoal for a fire.

C-2

A. càw si sàj cla hét njăŋ? What will you use paper for?

B. khój si sàj cla hóŋ năŋ I'll use paper to sit on.

NOTES

1) sàj 'to use' + NP + VP may be used in a similar way to dùaj + NP, i.e. to indicate the means or device used for accomplishing something. Compare the two sentences:

khój sàj būañ sôm kín khâw (Lit. I use spoon fork to eat.) 'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

khój kín khâw dùaj būañ sôm 'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

sàj may be used with persons as well as things, but should only be used by a person of superior status to one of lower status.

khój sàj lúuk khój paj sỳy 'I have my child go shopping for me.'

khój hâj (I use my child go buy things for.)
APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw ___________ pyyn khūū khôn khî-lāk
   (He uses a gun to scare off thieves.)

(b) khákàw sàj mîit-thēs _______________ hâj kan
   (They used razors to shave their heads with.)

(c) láaw ______ khwām phānjānjāām hēt wîak con sâm rēt
   (He uses effort to work until he is successful.)

(d) láaw bō bālāat phōwāā láaw _______ hūa khōçh lāaw
   hâj pen pânjûot
   (He is not clever since he has never used his head to
    advantage.)

(e) láaw ___________ pen khînj-mîy khōçh lāaw
   (He uses money as a tool.)

(f) wēlāā láaw pez nānjyī láaw ___________ wâtcānāânkıom
   (He didn't use a dictionary while translating the book.)

(g) láaw sàj ______________ phān bâat-phēs láaw
   (He used a clean cloth to wrap his wounds with.)

(h) khāì bō khdēj sàj nēn doolâā khōj khēej _____ nēn kîîp
   (I've never used dollars. I've only used kips.)

Answers: 1(a)sàj (b)thēs hūa (c)sàj (d)bō khdēj sàj (e)sàj
   nēn (f)bō bāl (g)phāa sâʔâat (h)sàj tēs
(1) láaw __________ bọọ phian mán cỳn phée jūu lỳaj
(He doesn't use his car carefully so it's always out of fix.)

(j) láaw __________ khôn-sàj láaw paj sỳy kh.nome
(He uses his servant for (to go) shopping.)

(k) láaw sàj kòon-thaaj-hùup __________ láaw cỳn ______ hùup
(He doesn't know how to use a camera so he didn't get any pictures.)

(l) láaw __________ khôn-sàj phòwaa láaw bọọ jàak hǎp
sàj khôn yyn
(He doesn't want to be a servant since he doesn't want to be used by others.)

(m) __________ phêcùn-thëi samlap wàaŋ phêcùnkaan
(Use a map for laying plans.)

(n) khôn láaw __________________ nàa
(Laotians used water buffaloes for plowing.)

(o) láaw __________________ Parker
(He uses a Parker pen.)

(p) láaw __________ sësŋ-taa sákót cít
(He uses his eyesight to hypnotize.)

(q) lọt khôn nìi __________ phòwaa khâ’cák mán taaj
(This car can't be used since its motor is dead.)

(r) thûk khôn __________ thëi mìi khùnnâ-phàap dìi
(Everybody likes to use things that are of good quality.)

(s) láaw bọọ hùucák __________________________
(He doesn't know how to use it.)

Answers: (1)sàj lọt (j)sàj (k)bọọ pen... bọọ dàj (l)bọọ jàak
pen (m)sàj (n)sàj khwâaj thâaj (o)sàj pâakkaa (p)sàj
(q)sàj bọọ dàj (r)màk sàj khôn (s)sàj

355
2) Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) khâj mâk sâj thăn khûakin phômâ mân sá dúak dii
(b) khâcâw ñoô mí tân li khâcâw cyû sâj ña mân nân
(c) sâaw bán jîu náj myân làaw sâj têñ bûñ kînkîhôw
(d) myâ wêéláa fôn ñô tôk phûuck phûm náa sâj khîâncák làbaaj nâm khôw náa
(e) khâj si sâj làaw pât tálâat hâj khâj phômâ khâj míi wîk làaj
(f) làaw sâj không lâw nîi ñoô pen mân cyû phêe
(g) kâan sâj déknôô jêñ wîk không phûm njâj njôm pen kâan kâtham thîi bôô lôcâkhôôp
(h) sâaw bán phàâa kan sâj phâa phán hûa phômâ dêñt hóon làaj
(i) thâawâa bôô nân pêyan khâcâw si tôñ sâj nêswdâj nêswînâ nhóon nân
(j) kâan sâj sinhkhông taman jàñ bôô thâyk tôñ taman phômâpàñjôot khôô míâ âat câ? nâm phôm sîa hâaj màa sùu phûm sàj

Answers: 2(a) I like to use charcoal for cooking because it's nice and convenient. (b) They don't have chairs so they use paper to sit on. (c) Villagers in Laos use only spoons to eat with. (d) When there is no rain, rice farmers use an irrigating machine to bring water into the rice fields. (e) I'll have (lit. make use of) him go to the market for me since I have a lot of work. (f) He doesn't know how to use these things so they break down. (g) Using children to do the work of adults is not a circumspect act (is not advisable). (h) Villagers as a group wrap cloth around their heads because the sun is so hot. (i) If the seats are dirty, they'll have to use something or other to sit on. (j) Incorrect use of things may bring poor results to the user.
CYCLE 74

M-1

pátithín
   pátithín mìi wàj sàmlāp
   njāŋ?
   a calendar

móon
   móon mìi wàj sàmlāp njāŋ?
   What's a calendar for?
   a clock, watch

sàaj sêw
   sàaj sêw mìi wàj sàmlāp
   njāŋ?
   What is a watch for?
   a belt

pyyn
   pyyn mìi wàj sàmlāp njāŋ?
   What's a gun for?
   a gun

koonthāp
   koonthāp mìi wàj sàmlāp
   njāŋ?
   What's an army for?
   an army, armed forces

lōt-dāp-phēen
   lōt-dāp-phēen mìi wàj
   sàmlāp njāŋ?
   What's a fire engine for?
   a fire engine

lōt- hōonmōo
   lōt-hōonmōo mìi wàj sàmlāp
   njāŋ?
   What's an ambulance for?
   an ambulance
M-2

banthūk, khoncép

lōt-hōomāo mī wāj sāmlāp
banthūk khoncép

tell, time

bōok, wēelāa

mōoŋ mī wāj sāmlāp bōok
wēelāa

A clock is for telling time.

hāt

sāaj-eew mī wāj sāmlāp hāt

fasten

wānthīi

pātíthīn mī wāj sāmlāp
bōok wānthīi

A belt is for fastening.

pōŋkan, pāthèet

kōonthāp mī wāj sāmlāp
pōŋkan pāthèet

defend, country

mōot fāj

lōt-dāp-phōoun mī wāj
sāmlāp mōot fāj

A fire engine is for putting out fires.

C-1

A. pyyn mī wāj sāmlāp njāŋ?
What's a gun for?

B. pyyn mī wāj sāmlāp njīŋ
A gun's for shooting.
C-2

A. háw míi lọt-họọmǎc wàj sàmlàp njāŋ?

What do we use an ambulance for?

B. háw míi lọt-họọmǎc wàj sàmlàp bānthūk khōn cēp

We use an ambulance for transporting sick persons.

C-3

A. kọọnthāp míi wàj sàmlàp mōt fāj mēn bōo?

Is it true that an army is for putting out fires?

B. bōo mēn, kọọnthāp míi wàj sàmlàp pōọŋkan pāthēet

No, an army is for defending a country.

NOTES

1) míi wàj sàmlàp 'to be on hand for use as' occurs in the construction:

NP + míi wàj sàmlàp + VP

mōn míi wàj sàmlàp bōok wēlāa

'A watch is for telling time.'

The negative of this construction seldom occurs. It is

NP + bōo mēn + míi wàj sàmlàp ....

kēep bōo mēn míi wàj sàmlàp ....

'Shoes are not for ....'
APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English.

(a) khyank nk mi waj samlap njan khoj koo bok huu

(b) pakkaa mern khoj thi haw mi waj samlap khian

(c) pyyn mi waj samlap pconkan tua

(d) aahsan mi waj samlap lan siwit khoj khon leh sat

(e) nhu leh khwaj suan maka juh naj eesia mi waj samlap saj wlak

(f) pyum san mi waj samlap san leh pyum khian mi waj samlap khian

(g) pyum law nk mi waj samlap cekjaaj haj nakhian thaw nar

(h) keyp bok mern mi waj samlap saj hua teh mi waj samlap saj tiin

(i) sorkhaw mi waj samlap khian saj kadaan

(j) maj banthat mi waj samlap khit sern

Answers: 1(a) What this machine is for I don’t know. (b) A pen is a thing that we have (on hand) for writing. (c) A gun is for defending oneself with. (d) Food is for nourishing life of people and animals. (e) In Asia most cattle and water buffaloes are for working. (f) A reading book is for reading and a writing book (notebook) is for writing in. (g) These books are for distribution to the students only. (h) Shoes aren’t for wearing on your head but are for wearing on your feet. (i) Chalk is for writing on the blackboard. (j) A ruler is for drawing lines.
CYCLE 75

M-1

tèsk̡ôn
tèsk̡ôn càw jùu sǎ́j?
in the past, previously
Where were you previously?

tèsk̡li
tèsk̡li càw jùu sǎ́j?
in the past, previously
Where were you previously?

njáam

njáam kh̡įj bɔ̀ sa̤baaj càw jùu sǎ́j?
time, period
Where were you at the time that I was sick?

m̡ya, kɔ̀n

m̡ya sɔ̀n pîi kɔ̀n càw jùu sǎ́j?
when; before, first
Where were you two years ago?

m̡y, kh̡ýyn, m̡y kh̡ýyn nî
m̡y kh̡ýyn nî càw jùu sǎ́j?
day, time; night, last night
Where were you last night?

lèsəw

m̡y wáncan lèsəw nî càw jùu sǎ́j?
finish, over, last
Where were you last Monday?

M-2

pátcúban, pácəm

the present, nowadays; to be stationed at

pátcúban nî lảaw thîyək sɔ̀n
Presently he is being sent to be stationed at Pakse.
paj pácəm jùu pâakséəe
mọọ, mọa mọọ mọọ nli
  mọa mọọ mọọ nli láaw thỳyk
  sōn paj pácam jūu pâaksée
ear, close; recently
  Recently he was sent to be
  stationed at Pakse.

don, mọa bọb bọb nli
  mọa bọb bọb nli láaw thỳyk
  sōn paj pácam jūu pâaksée
  long time, not long ago
  Not long ago he was sent to
  be stationed at Pakse.

kaaj, pii kaaj nli
  pii kaaj nli láaw thỳyk
  sōn paj pácam jūu pâaksée
  pass, go past; last year
  Last year he was sent to be
  stationed at Pakse.

diaw nli
  diaw nli láaw thỳyk sōn
  paj pácam jūu pâaksée
  now, at the present time
  Now he is being sent to be
  stationed at Pakse.

C-1

A. diaw nli láaw pácam jūu
  sāj?
  Where is he stationed now?

B. diaw nli láaw pácam jūu
  pâaksée
  Right now he is stationed
  at Pakse.

C-2

A. terekēn láaw jūu sāj?
  Where was he before?

B. terekēn láaw jūu mọaŋ láaw
  Before he was in Laos.
A. láaw hēt njān jımı hān?  What was he doing there?
B. láaw thỳyk sŏŋ paj pācam  He was sent to be stationed
   jımı hān

NOTES

1) The following list of time expressions is given for your
   convenience:

(a) Days of the week in order: wán-can, wán-âŋkhāan, wán-phūt
    wán-phāhāt, wán-sūk, wán-sàw, wán-aathīt.

(b) Months of the year in order: mōkkārāa, kumphaā, mīnāa,
    mēesāa, phỳtsāphāa, mīthūnāa, koorākādaa, sīṅhāa, kan-
    njāa, tūlāa, phỳtsācíkāa, thānwāa.

(c) mỳy nī 'today', mỳy wāan nī 'yesterday', mỳy ĭyn
    'tomorrow', mỳy hỳy 'day after tomorrow', mỳy sỳyn 'day
    before yesterday'.

(d) tēe koon kīl 'previously', 'before', sŏng pīl koon '2 years
    ago'.
    aathīt lēsw nī 'a week ago', mỳa mōō mōō nī 'recently',
    mỳa būō don máa nī 'not long ago', mỳy wán-âŋkhāan lēsw nīl
    'last Tuesday', mỳy wán-sūk nāa 'next Friday', pīl kāaj
    nīl 'last year', diaw nīl pātcūban nīl 'now', pīl nāa 'next year!',
    nāj wēelāa nān 'at that time'.

363
(e) näj dyan mîthûnîâá pîi phân kàw hîjî hoksîp hâa 'in June 1965', mîa weelâa khôj jëw... 'when I was living in...'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) ____________ pîi 1967 khôj jëw mîa wiañcan.
   (In August 1967 I was living in Vientiane.)

(b) ____________ lâaw p $$\ddot{a}$$j ë$$\ddot{a}$$m-jaam phyan lâaw jëw hûom$$\ddot{a}$$o
   (Last Thursday he went to visit his friend in the hospital.)

(c) khôj dà$$\ddot{a}$$j hùucâk kâp yaj lâaw mîa ____________ nànsyî
   jëw sà$$\ddot{a}$$ñ$$\ddot{a}$$n
   (I met his older sister when I was studying in Saigon.)

(d) ____________ lâaw kamlân ë$$\ddot{a}$$n p$$\ddot{y}$$m thî lâa sòncaj hûa nî$$\ddot{a}$$
   (He is reading an interesting book at the present time.)

(e) ____________ khôj dàj khîî hîa p$$\ddot{a}$$aksée
   (Not long ago I went to Pakse by boat.)

(f) ____________ khôj njâñ thàâj-hùup b$$\ddot{a}$$$$\ddot{a}$$ pen.
   (Last year I still didn't know how to take pictures.)

Answers: 1(a)mîa dyan sînhâa (b)mîy wânphâhât lèw nî (c)weelâa khôj hî$$\ddot{a}$$n (d)patcúban nî (e)mîa b$$\ddot{a}$$$$\ddot{a}$$ don màa nî (f)pîi kaa$$\ddot{a}$$ nî
(g) cãw ká wää cá pük hýan ___________ bõo?
(Do you expect to build a house next month?)

(h) ___________ láaw pháa khácãw paj lín náj mýaŋ
(Last night he took them out on the town.)

(i) ___________ khâw khôj bõõ njáŋ câk mét. dìaw nìi khôj míi hók thón
(Two weeks ago I didn’t have any rice left. Now I have six bags.)

(j) sãn-njáa nìi dàj sén kan ___________
(This contract was signed not long ago.)

(k) ___________ láaw njáŋ thýyk khâng jùu bõo?
(Was he still locked up last Tuesday?)

(l) ___________ láaw dàj sàj nìi không láaw con mót
(Recently he paid off all his debts.)

(m) khôj dàj 30k câak thãhãan ___________ 1945.
(I left military service on September 19, 1945.)

(n) khácãw thýyk põõj tua mýy khyyn nìi ___________
(They were released last night at 10:30 p.m.)

Answers: (g)náj dyan nàa nìi (h)mýy khyyn nìi (1)mýa sõn aathít kõõn (j)mýa bõõ naan maa nìi (k)mýy wàn aŋkhõaŋ lèw nìi (1)mýa mõõ mõõ maa nìi (m)mýa wânthí sip kàw kan-njáa (n)weeláa sip mõõn khõŋ
(o) ____________ khọj bế mìi wịak hêt
(I was out of work last year.)

(p) ____________ láaw hệtkaan jụụ sátȟañthùut áméelikan
jụụ mýaŋ wiançaŋ
(At present he works at the American Embassy in Vientiane.

(q) àaj láaw sǐŋa sǐiwít mýa ____________ pìi kaaj nî
(Her older brother died in July last year.)

(r) ____________ khọj ____________ dékñọj khọj mǎk hían wiŋsâa
phúumísâat
(When I was a child, I like to study geography.)

(s) ____________ khọj njâŋ hían nâŋ Giáy jụụ thỉ thâ nhâwíthâ-
njáalâj óplóm khúu
(At that time I was still studying at the teacher training
college.)

(t) ____________ mɛɛ khọj dâj màa jaam phuák khọj
(The day before yesterday my mother came to visit us.)

(u) ____________ khọj khâw nóon wééláa sıp móon khâŋ
(Every night I go to bed at 10:30 p.m.)

Answers:  (o)pìi kaaj nîi (p)pátcúban nîi (q)dyan koɔrâkâdaa
(r)mýa wééláa... njâŋ pen... (s)wééláa nán (t)mïy
syyn (u)thûk thûk khýyn
(v) khọj si dàj phọc láaw jùu thīm myañ síkháakoo náj ______ ________ nàa
          (I'll get to meet her in Chicago next December.)

(w) mya wéeláa bàaj sọnj móon láaw ________ nọon ________
          (He was still asleep at 2:00 p.m.)

(x) hàan-khạaj-khọñ jùu náj myañ wíançan pêet wéeláa kàw
          móon sàw __________
          Shops in Vientiane open at 9:00 a.m. every day.)

(y) khọj hâp ccoon nāhs fy phím __________ nyñ sâbáp
          (I subscribe to a weekly newspaper.)

Answers: (v)dyan thán wáa (w)njàŋ... jùu (x)thûk thûk myy
          (y)pacam sápádaa
LAO BASIC COURSE

CYCLE 76

M-1

lǎn câak, njàaj
lǎn câak nàn lâaw sì dāj
njàaj śok paj jūu bàan nòok
lǎn câak nīi lâaw sì dāj
njàaj śok paj jūu bàan nòok
lǎn câak pii phán kâw hōoŋ
hōksǐp lâaw dāj njàaj śok
paj jūu bàan nòok

after, move
After that he will get to
move out to the countryside.
After this he will get to
move out to the countryside.
After 1960 he got to move
out to the countryside.

tɔɔ, tɔɔ { paj
māa

Later on he got to move out
to the countryside.
Then he will get to move out
to the countryside.

M-2

tɔɔ, tɔɔ nàn māa

tɔɔ nàn māa lâaw dāj njàaj
paj sâj bɔo?

from, since; since then
From that time on did he get
to move anywhere?

from now on
From now on will he get to
move anywhere?

368
con, thën

con thën pátcúban láaw
dàj njàaj paj sǎj bòo?

náj mɔɔ mɔɔ nǐi

náj mɔɔ mɔɔ nǐi láaw si
dàj njàaj paj sǎj bòo?

ánáakhōt, kàj

náj ánáakhōt an kàj nǐi
láaw si dàj njàaj paj
sǎj bòo?

wáj, náj wáj wáj nǐi

náj wáj wáj nǐi láaw si
dàj njàaj paj sǎj bòo?

until; reach, to get to

Until now did he get to
move anywhere?

soon

Soon will he get to move
anywhere?

future, near

In the near future will he
get to move anywhere?

fast, in the very near future

In the very near future will
he get to move anywhere?

C-1

A. tɔɔ māa láaw dàj njàaj
paj sǎj bòo?

Later on did he get to move
anywhere?

B. dàj njàaj, tɔɔ māa láaw
dàj njàaj ɔok paj jùu
bàan nɔɔk

Yes. Later on he got to
move out to the countryside.

C-2

A. láaw si thÿyk njàaj nàj
wáj wáj nǐi, mɛɛn bɔɔ?

He will be transferred very
soon, is that right?

B. mɛɛn lèew, láaw si thÿyk
njàaj nàj wáj wáj nǐi

That's right, he will be
transferred very soon.
A. láaw si thỳykJ njàaj paj sāj?

B. láaw si thỳykJ njàaj 3ōk paj pācam jūn ñèān nōok

Where will he be transferred to?

He will be transferred out and stationed in the countryside.

NOTES

1) Certain types of time expressions can only be explained with reference to the 'present time'. On the diagram below 'present time' is represented by the line in the center of the page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'past'</th>
<th>'present'</th>
<th>'future'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tǣ nān màā</td>
<td>tǣ nī paj</td>
<td>tǣ nī paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'from that time on'</td>
<td>'from now on'</td>
<td>'from now on'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tǣ màā</td>
<td>tǣ paj</td>
<td>tǣ paj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'later on'</td>
<td>'then'</td>
<td>'then'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lānçāak nān</td>
<td>lānçāak nī</td>
<td>lānçāak nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'after that'</td>
<td>'after this'</td>
<td>'after this'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con thën pātcūban</td>
<td>*nāj mōō mōō nī</td>
<td>*nāj mōō mōō nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'until now'</td>
<td>'soon'</td>
<td>'soon'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*nāj ānāakhōt an kāj nī</td>
<td>*nāj ānāakhōt an kāj nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'in the near future'</td>
<td>'in the near future'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*nāj wāj wāj nī</td>
<td>*nāj wāj wāj nī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'in the very near future'</td>
<td>'in the very near future'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPLICATION

1) Read the sentences below carefully and supply the time expression that fits best. In some cases more than one answer is acceptable.

(a) láaw jìu hían lăn nì làa tān tẹt mỳ láaw kāēt ________
    _________ láaw koo njān bɔɔ dāj njāaj pāj sāj

(b) láaw khēej thỳyk tamlùat cáp thỳa nỳn __________
    láaw bɔɔ kāāⁱ khāp lōt wāj

(c) láaw bɔɔ khēej tāncaj hían láaw cỳn sǹg bɔɔ dāj. mỳ nì
tāncaj hían láaw dāj bɔɔk kāp phɔɔ m rè láaw wāa ____________ láaw sì
    tāncaj hían lāaj kwāā tẹt kāān

(d) mỳa sīi pii kāān láaw dāj pāj kamkāp² wǐak jìu thāaŋ
    phāak nỳa ____________ láaw dāj thỳykh njāaj lōŋ pāj
    phāak tāj lēⁿ dīaw nī láaw koo njān jìu hān

(e) dīaw nī láaw kamlāŋ hían kāan hāksāa khwāam sāⁿ-āt
    khỳānčāk ____________ láaw cāⁿ dāj hían kāan sōmpēeŋ

(f) wēelāa khēj pāj jīam jaam láaw mỳa sōŋ dyan kāān láaw
    bɔɔ sābaaj lāaj lēⁿ wēelāa khēj cāak láaw māa láaw koo
    njān bɔɔ sāw ____________ sōŋ aathīt láaw koo mōt
    bun³

---

¹dare   ²supervise   ³die

Answers: 1(a) con thēn pātcūban (b) tān thē nān māā (c) thē
         nīl pāj (d) tāŋ māā (e) tāŋ pāj (f) lān cāak nān māā
(g) lọt fáj khán ní màa wèn ní mà jày ní mà pen thýa sútthàaj
_____________ khácàw si bọt aw màn len ëik

(h) khôi dàj hāp cótmāaj cāak phýan khôi jày sàw ní, làaw khían bợk khôi wàm ____________ làaw si pháa khọop-
hùa làaw màa jaam khôj, baangthíi âat cá màn aathít nàa

(i) diaw ní mà làaw kamläl thýy-pháa 4 ____________ làaw
koo cá? dàj pen phọt khôn

(j) làaw sôckhà khôn kháplôt khôc nò làaw phọwàm phýan làaw
sý màa cāak tān̄ patheet cá? màa hòt dēn-njón 5 ______
_________, làaw hòncaj 6 phọ làaw jàan wàm cá? pàj sàa

---

4 to be pregnant 5 airport 6 anxious, uneasy

Answers: (g) lēn cāak ní mà pàj (h, i, j) nàj mọt mọt ní mà (or)
naj ánàakhót an kàj ní mà (or) naj wàj wàj ní mà

372
CYCLE 77

M-1

†ik don paandaj

 càw si jǔu nîi †ik don paandaj?

How much longer will you be here?

†ik cák pii

 càw si pen thãhãan †ik cák pii?

How many more years will you be in the service?

†ik kaj paandaj

 càw si njān̄ paj †ik kaj paandaj?

How much farther will you walk?

†ik cák mỳy

 càw si nóon jǔu hōọnmọ †ik cák mỳy?

How many more days will you be confined in the hospital?

†ik cák sūāmòon

 càw si hêtwiak jǔu nîi †ik cák sūāmòon?

How many more hours will you be working here?

†ik cák pii

 càw si aasāį jǔu nîi †ik cák pii?

How many more years will you live here?

M-2

†ik sōŋ aathít

khǭj si hian phāsāa láaw †ik sōŋ aathít

I will study Lao language for two more weeks.

373
тик câk sôn sám mỳy
khọj si phāk jūu nîî tik
câk sôn sám mỳy

тик pâmāan hōk cēt dyan
khọj si hētkāan jūu nîî
tik pâmāan hōk cēt dyan

nākhîan tik nāj láaw sîp khôn
khọj si mîî nākhîan tik
nāj láaw sîp khôn

entifuloâ sîphâa hâa
sāaw hūa
khọj si sîyû pîm dâj tik
nâj lâwântoî sîphâa hâa
sâaw hūa

M-3

dão câak thânhâan
njân tik òon pàndaj lâaw
[cûn] si dâj òon câak
thânhâan?

dâj hâp nêndyan
njân tik câk aathît lâaw
[cûn] si dâj hâp nêndyan?

about two or three more days
I will stay here for about
two or three more days.

about six or seven more months
I will be working here for
about six or seven more months.

approximately ten more students
I will have approximately
ten more students.

between 15 to 20 books
I will be able to buy
between 15 to 20 more books.

leave the military service
How much longer before he
gets to leave the service?

receive salary
How many more weeks before
he gets his salary?
máa hōot
njān tôk pāmāan cāk sūamōon láaw [cỳŋ] si máa hōot

arrives
About how many more hours before he arrives?

hían, sāmlēt

njān tôk nāj láaw cāk pii láaw [cỳŋ] si hían sāmlēt?

study; complete, finish
Approximately how many more years before he finishes his studies?

khāw pen thāhān
njān tôk cāk dyān láaw [cỳŋ] si khāw pen thāhān?

join the military service
How many more months before he joins the service?

câak paj
njān tôk cāk nāathīi láaw [cỳŋ] si câak cāw paj?

leave, go away
How many more minutes before he leaves you?

pẹŋ
njān tôk cāk mỳy láaw [cỳŋ] si pẹŋlōt lèew?

fix, repair
How many more days before he finishes fixing cars?

M-4

sī, sūamōon
njān tôk pāmāan sī sūamōon

four, hour
In about four more hours.

bọọ don paandaj
njān tôk bọọ don paandaj

not a very long time
In not much longer.

bọọ lāaj sūamōon
njān tôk bọọ lāaj sūamōon

not many hours
In not many more hours.
sì hāa mỳy
nján ñik sì hāa mỳy
four or five days
In four or five days.

bóô thën dyan
nján ñik bóô thën dyan
less than a month
In less than a month.

bóô keen sāam aathit
nján ñik bóô keen sāam aathit
not more than three weeks
In not more than three weeks.

khen sūamōon phōodii
nján ñik khen sūamōon phōodii
exactly half an hour
In exactly half an hour.

C-1
A. câw si hian phāasāa lāaw ñik don paandaj?
How much longer will you be studying the Lao language?
B. khôj si hian phāasāa lāaw ñik sāamsip aathit
I'll be studying Lao for thirty more weeks.

C-2
A. câw si pen thāhāan ñik pāmāan câk pil?
About how many more years will you be in the service?
B. khôj si pen thāhāan ñik pāmāan sō̂n pil
I'll be in the service for about two more years.
C-3

A. caa w si njaaŋ paj tik náj láaw cák súamóonŋ?

B. khoŋ si njaaŋ paj tik náj láaw sɔŋ súa móonŋ

Approximately how many more hours will you walk?

I'll walk for approximately two more hours.

C-4

A. caa w si jūu nám láaw tik cák aathit?

B. khoŋ si jūu nám láaw tik cák sɔŋ sɔam aathit

How many more weeks will you be with her?

I'll be with her about two or three more weeks.

C-5

A. njaaŋ tik cák súamóonŋ láaw [cyn] si máa hoot?

B. njaaŋ tik bɔɔ lāaj súamóonŋ

How many more hours before he arrives?

In not many more hours.

C-6

A. njaaŋ tik don paandaj láaw [cyn] si dàj hāp ɲéndyan?

B. njaaŋ tik bɔɔ keen sɔŋ aathit.

How much longer before he gets his salary?

In not more than two weeks.
C-7

A. nján tīk cák dyan lāaw [cyn] si dāj 3ok thāhān? How many more months before he gets out of the service?
B. nján tīk bō thēn dyan In less than a month.

C-8

A. nján tīk don paandaj lāaw [cyn] si paj thēn? How much longer before he arrives (there)?
B. nján tīk pāmān sūmōn khēn In one and a half more hours.

NOTES

1) tīk means 'to be more, additional'. When it is followed by Time Expressions, it refers to a period of time beginning at the present and continuing. The focus is on the amount of time involved.

khōj si pen thāhān tīk 'I will be a soldier for six more years.'
hōk pii

2) nján tīk + Time Expressions also refers to a period of time beginning at the present time and continuing, but the focus is on an event which will take place after a certain period of time.

nján tīk hōk pii khōj (cyn) 'In 6 more years I'll get out of the service.'
si dāj 3ok thāhān

378
njáŋ FillColor + Time Expression comes at the beginning of the sentences; whereas, FillColor + Time Expression comes at the end.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw si jyun jùu hâń __________________________
   (How many more minutes will she stand there?)

(b) khâŋ si sân jùu hoonhian nîi __________________________
   (I'll teach at this school for approximately 3 more years.)

(c) láaw si tông tiii-cák __________________________
   (How much longer will she have to type?)

(d) __________________________khâw-ći láaw koo si mó̤t
   (In about 2 more days he will be out of bread.)

(e) láaw si nòon __________________________
   (How much longer will she be asleep?)

(f) láaw khôn cáø sùanjaw pháaj náj weelâa __________________________
   (It will not be more than 3 weeks before he recovers.)

(g) khâŋ si bôô thâa jùu nîi __________________________
   (I will not wait here many minutes more.)

__________________________

Answers: 1(a)FillColor cák naáthîi (b)FillColor náj láaw sâm pii (c)FillColor don paandaj (d)FillColor pâmân sân mîy (e)FillColor don paandaj (f)FillColor keen sâm aathîit (g)FillColor láaj naáthîi
(h) ________________ hók súamóon kjhj koo si mya bāan
(In less than 6 hours more I'll go home.)

(i) ________________ lāaw koo si lēek kaan
(In about 10 minutes more he'll be out of work.)

(j) ________________ pỳm koo si lēzw
(In about 5 or 6 more days the book will be finished.)

(k) ________________ lāaw cỳŋ si thỳyk keen khâw pen thāhǎan?
(How many more weeks before he gets drafted into the army?)

(l) c'àw ká? wàa cá? jùu nǐ ________________?
(How much longer do you plan to stay here?)

(m) ________________ mỳy kjhj koo si dàj pòɔ lāaw
(In less than half a day I will meet her.)

(n) ________________ kjhj koo si bɔk kin bìa bəmnáaŋ
(It will not be very many more years before I retire.)

(o) c'àw sì pàj tìisék jùu náj wìatnáaŋ ________________?
(How many more weeks will you go fight in Vietnam?)

Answers: (h)nján fìk bɔɔ keen (i)nján fìk sìp náathǐi (j)nján fìk hâa hók mỳy (k)nján fìk càk aathìt (l)fìk don paandaŋ (m)nján fìk bɔɔ thỳŋ khàŋ (n)nján fìk bɔɔ làaj pii (o)fìk càk aathìt
(p) khơj kɔɔ siipaj nốon dàj
(It will not be many more hours before I can go to bed.)

(q) càw si sỳy pỳm
(How many more books will you buy?)

(r) hàw njàŋ míi wéeláa hían
(How much more time do we have to study?)

2) Cover the Lao and see if you can translate the English back into Lao.

Answers: (p) njàŋ fìk bɔɔ lǎaj sùamóono (q) fìk cák hũa (r) fìk lǎaj paandaj
M-1

\textit{taamthámmáada}

\textit{taamthámmáadaa khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{What kind of food do they normally like to eat?}

\textit{suánmàak}

\textit{suánmàak khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{mainly}

\textit{láań thya}

\textit{láań thya khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{sometimes}

\textit{láań miy}

\textit{láań miy khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{somedays}

\textit{dooj thúa paj lèew}

\textit{dooj thúa paj lèew khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{generally}

\textit{dooj sáph̄ɔ̄ lèew}

\textit{dooj sáph̄ɔ̄ lèew khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{in particular}

\textit{bāań wééláa}

\textit{bāań wééláa khácàw mák kin aahǎan néew daj?}

\textit{sometimes}

\textit{What kind of food do they like to eat sometimes?}
M-2

aahǎan phét

taamthámmadaa khácàw māk
kin aahǎan phét

spicy food

They normally like to eat
spicy food.

aahǎan khém

sūanmàak khácàw māk kin
aahǎan khém

salty food

They mainly like to eat
salty food.

khỏơnwǎan

láanṭhya khácàw māk kin
khỏơnwǎan

sweets

Sometimes they like to have
sweets.

aahǎan sôme

láan myỳ khácàw māk kin
aahǎan sôme

sour food

Somedays they like to eat
sour food.

aahǎan cỳyt

dooj thūa paj lèsw khácàw
māk kin aahǎan cỳyt

bland food

Generally they like bland
food.

aahǎan phỳyn mỳañ

dooj sàphɔ̀ lèsw khácàw
māk kin aahǎan phỳyn mỳañ

native food

Particularly they like to
eat native food.

aahǎan tǎañ páthèqueet

baañ weèlàa khácàw māk
kin aahǎan tǎañ páthèqueet

exotic food

Sometimes they like to eat
exotic food.
C-1
A. taamthámmádaa càw māk kin aahăn nēsw daj?
B. taamthámmádaa khój māk kin aahăn phét

C-2
A. càw si kin aahăn nēsw daj?
B. khój si kin aahăn jīpūn
A. aahăn jīpūn cûyt, mēn bōo?
B. mēn lēsw, taamthámmádaa khón jīpūn māk kin aahăn cûyt

What kind of food will you have?
I will have Japanese food.
The Japanese food is bland, isn't it?
That's right, normally the Japanese like to eat bland food.
APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide:

(a) __________ sip móon khôj cyŋ lük câak bông nòon
(Normally I don't get up until 10 o'clock.)

(b) __________ láaw bêŋ thoôrêthêt jôm con dék
(Sometimes she stays up late watching TV.)

(c) __________ lêesw mâi khôj bông mák mâa
(My wife dislikes dogs in particular.)

(d) náj râduu náaw __________ fôntôk mút mûy
(Some days in Winter it rains all day.)

(e) sáaw nâa __________ sàj khwaaj thêj náa khâcâw
(Most farmers use water buffaloes for plowing rice fields.)

(f) __________ kînhâw thian phûu diaw
(I usually eat lunch by myself.)

(g) __________ khôj hêt wîak náj mûy wân-sâw
(Normally I work on Saturday.)

(h) __________ khâcâw kin paa lê aahān thâlêe
(They mainly eat fish and sea food.)

Answers: 1(a)taamthâmmâdaa (b)láâng thêa (c)dooj sâph3°
(d)láâng mûy (e)sûan maaek (f)taamthâmmâdaa khôj
(g)taamthâmmâdaa (h)sûan maaek
(1) ___________ láaw vàw pháasāa an<r>nít
(Normally he speaks English.)

(j) ___________ khōj tōoŋ thāa láaw káp bāaŋ thēŋ sōŋ sūa móoŋ
(Sometimes I have to wait 2 hours for her to come home.)

(k) ___________ lēsw láaw màk màa sāa sāaw háa sāamsíp nāathíí
(She generally comes 20 to 30 minutes late.)

(l) ___________ lēsw khōj màk khōŋ wāan
(I like desserts in particular.)

_________________________

Answers: (1)taamthámmádaa (j)lāaan thīə (k)dooj thūaj pəj
(l)dooj sāphī̞̄ō
M-1

cáʔtòɔŋ

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw

cáʔtòɔŋ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ

must

If he is going, he must choose a guide.

khúan cáʔ

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw

khúan cáʔ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ

ought to

If he is going, he ought to choose a guide.

âat cáʔ

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw

âat cáʔ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ

might

If he is going, he might choose a guide.

khýy si

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw

khýy si lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ

be likely

If he is going, he will be likely to choose a guide.

campen tòɔŋ

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw

campen tòɔŋ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ

it will be necessary for

If he is going, it will be necessary for him to choose a guide.

khôn cáʔ

thâawāā láaw si paj láaw

khôn cáʔ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ

probably

If he is going, he will probably choose a guide.
M-2

thỳyk láj 3ok

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° thỳyk láj 3ok

be fired

Before he goes, he might be fired.

tèen tàn, húa nàa

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° thỳyk tèen tàn pen húa nàa
to appoint; chief, boss

Before he goes, he might be appointed to be a chief.

thỳyk lyak khyn pen pàtháan

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° thỳyk lyak khyn pen pàtháan

be chosen to be the chairman

Before he goes, he might be chosen to be the chairman.

tátsîncaj hâj càw jùu

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° tátsîncaj hâj càw jùu
decide to let you stay

Before he goes, he might decide to let you stay.

hëndiî hâj càw làa phâk

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° hëndiî hâj càw làa phâk

consent to letting you take leave

Before he goes, he might consent to letting you take leave.

3okkhâm sàn hâj càp làaw

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° 3okkhâm sàn hâj càp làaw

issue an order to arrest him

Before he goes, he might issue an order to arrest him.

tóklóngcaj hâj púuj khácàw

kộn làaw si paj làaw âat
câ° tôklóngcaj hâj púuj khácàw

agree to free them

Before he goes, he might agree to free them.
C-1

A. thàawăaw làaw si paj làaw si hêt njăñ?  What is he going to do before he goes?

B. làaw si lỳak aw náaj tháañ  He will choose a guide.

C-2

A. kông làaw si paj làaw âat cá? hêt njăñ bôo?  Might he do something before he goes? (is it probable)

B. kông làaw si paj làaw âat cá? tâtsîncaj përj khâcâw  Before he goes, he might decide to free them.

C-3

A. kông làaw si paj làaw si campen tôñh hâj cài làâ phâik bôo?  Before he goes, will it be necessary for him to let you take leave?

B. măng lêèw, kông làaw si paj làaw campen tôñh hâj khêj làâ phâik  Yes, before he goes, it is necessary for him to let me take leave.
NOTES

1) Words which occur in the position between NP (Subject) and MV are called 'preverbs'. One of the most important groups of preverbs are the 'modals': ton, khuán, âat, khîy, campen ton, khôn, etc. Each of these words is used in a wide range of situations, and there is some overlap in their usage in Lao. It is, therefore, difficult to indicate their meaning briefly. The following description is meant as a general guide only. The only good way to learn how to use them is to observe the situations in which Lao speakers use each of them and to imitate their usage.

(a) (caʔ/ si) ton 'must, have to'. The situation requires it.
   haw ton ṣi khaa faj faa 'We have to pay our electric bill.'

(b) khuán (caʔ/ si) 'should, ought to'. Social or moral obligation or expectation.
   caʔ bɔŋ khuán caʔ kîn lâaj 'You shouldn't eat too much.'

(c) âat (caʔ/ si) 'may, might'. Likelihood, expectation, possibility.
   láaw âat caʔ bɔŋ sábaaj lâaj 'He may be very ill.'

(d) khîy (si / caʔ) 'may, might'. Similar to âat
   khîy si mæn 'It may be so.'

(e) khôn (caʔ/ si) 'it is likely'. Probability.
   láaw khôn caʔ bɔŋ hûu 'It is likely that he doesn't know.'
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw ________ khǎaj khǒn bơ̄ mòt dēok phǒ̄wǎa mỳy nlı̄ bơ̄ míi khôn paj tālāat lǎaj paandaj.
(She probably won't sell out her goods, since there aren't very many people going to the market today.)

(b) khácàw bơ̄ míi lọt lọ̄ thǎaŋ sën nlı̄ bơ̄ míi lọt thỉaw khácàw ________ njàāŋ paj
(They don't have a car and there are no cars on this road. They must necessarily walk.)

(c) láaw ________ māa phǒ̄wǎa láaw si hēt wlàk lèsw mỳy nlı̄
(He may come since he will have finished his work today.)

(d) kaan hāksǎa pǐn pua hāj jǐu săbaaj mè̄̄n sǐn thỉहāw
__________ hēt
(Maintaining good health is the thing we must do.)

(e) diāw nlı̄ mān kaaj wěélāa māa dāj sǐ̄n sūa mó̄n lèsw láaw
________ bơ̄ māa dēok
(It's two hours past the time now. He must not be coming at all.)

(f) láaw ________ cǎ̄j ně̄n khǎaj hyan thūk thūk tòn dyan
(He has to pay the rent on his house at the beginning of each month.)

(g) láaw ________ paj hǎp aw māa láaw kǒ̄n láaw si paj kinkhāw
(He will have to go pick up his wife before going to eat.)

Answers: 1(a)khỳy si (b)si campen tǒnn (c)ṭat cáʔ (d)campen tǒnn (e)khǒn cáʔ (f)tǒnn (g)si tǒnn
(h)  thâawa caw kho thoot nam lâaw lâaw _______ áphâj
hâj caw
(If you apologize to him, he may forgive you.)

(i)  lâaw paj dâj sî sâa móon lêśw, paan nî lâaw _______
hôot lêśw
(He's been going for 4 hours already. He must have
arrived by now.)

(j)  mîa hûu waa mân bôî diî lêśw phûakhâw koo bôî ______hêt
(If (we) know it's not good, we shouldn't do it.)

(k)  phênh _______ bôî kin phôówâa aahâan nî phët lâaj
(He may not eat since the food is very hot.)

(l)  dék nócî _______ sâa fân khâm sânsôn khaôn phôô mëe
(Children should listen to the advice of their parents.)

(m)  mîa wêelâa lâaw bôî míi kaan hêt lâaw koo _______ hâa
nên duaj wîthî daj wîthî nîn
(During the times when he is out of work, he must seek
money by any means or other.)

(n)  lâaw _______ taaj phôówâa thêân môo bôî míi jaa câ?
hâksâa lâaw
(He may die since the doctor doesn't have any medicine
to cure him.)

(o)  lâaw _______ paj sêy khyarîn jûn tâlât phôówâa lâaw
bôî míi aahâan
(He will have to go buy food at the market because he
doesn't have any food.)

Answers: (h)âat câ? (i)không câ? (j)khûan (k)âat câ? (l)khûan
(m)câmpen tôon (n)âat câ? (o)sî tôon
(p) mỹa weelāa láaw míi  mên láaw koo ________ thọơn mên wàj samlāp weelāa campen
(When he has money, he should save it for time of need.)

(q) diaw nǐi láaw thūk lāaj láaw ________ khọothāán kin
(Now he's very poor. He has to beg for food.)

(r) nàm màn lōt bǔ̄ lāaj hāw ________ paj bǔ̄ hōot
(There's not much gas in the car, we may not get there.)

(s) khēj khīt wā̄a láaw ________ paj bǔ̄ dāj dē̄k phāwāa
lāaw míi wīāk lāaj
(I think he may not be able to go at all because he has a lot of work.)

(t) khȧcāw hāk kān lāaj khēj khīt wā̄a mỹa weelāa tẹ̄n ṇāan
kān lēswer khācāw ________ míi khwāam sūk nām kān
(They're very much in love. I think they should be very happy after they get married.)

(u) khēj dāj njīn wā̄a láaw jāak paj bē̄ː sīìēe tẹ̄ don lēswer
thāawāa cȧw suān láaw láaw ________ paj
(I heard she has been wanting to go to the movies for a long time, if you ask her, she may go.)

(v) láaw sī ________ paj sōok hāa khācāw phāwāa láaw
tōn̄kaan khācāw
(He will have to go look for them because he needs them.)

(w) phā̄c mḕ ________ sā̃n̄son lūuk kḥōn tōn ph̄yā njē̄j màa
khācāw cā' pen khōn dīi
(Parents should train their children so that when they grow up they'll be good people.)

Answers: (p)khūān (q)campen tōn̄ (r)khyy sī (s)khyy sī (t)khōn
cā' (u)khyy sī (v)tōn̄ (w)khūān cā' - khyy and āat
are practically interchangeable and cā' and sī are.
M-1

paj, mán láaw
càw kêej dâj paj mán láaw boo?
to go, Laos

hèn, sáí, pâlâat
càw kêej hèn sáí pâlâat
see, animal, strange

sîm, sîn, khwáaj
càw kêej sîm sîn khwáaj boo?
taste, meat, flesh, water buffalo

mân, nân sỳ phîm
càw kêej dâj mân nân sỳ sỳ phîm sàat láaw boo?
read, newspaper

tíitian
càw kêej dâj thỳk tíitian boo?
criticize

njóon
càw kêej dâj thỳk khácàw njóon njóo boo?
compliment

thỳk keen pen thàhàan
càw kêej dâj thỳk keen pen thàhàan boo?
to be drafted

Have you ever been to Laos?
Have you ever seen a strange animal?
Have you ever tasted water buffalo meat?
Have you ever read the Sat Lao Newspaper?
Have you ever been criticized?
Have you ever been complimented by them?
Have you ever been drafted?
M-2
khéej
bɔɔ, nján bɔɔ khéej
Yes. (I have...)
No. (I have never...)

M-3
dàj paj mýañ láaw
khéej, khôj khéej dàj paj
mýañ láaw lâaj thýa lèsw
to have been to Laos
Yes, I have been to Laos
many times already.

thôtlôon
khéej, khôj khéej dàj
thôtlôon lâaj thýa lèsw
experiment
Yes, I have experimented
many times already.

M-4
sàj nèsw nîi
bɔɔ, khôj nján bɔɔ khéej
dàj sàj nèsw nîi cákthýa
use this kind
No, I have never used this
kind at all.

sûup, jaa fin
bɔɔ, khôj nján bɔɔ khéej
dàj sûup jaa fin cákthýa
smoke, opium
No, I have never smoked opium
at all.

khit, tɛən nāan
bɔɔ, khôj nján bɔɔ khéej
think, get married
khit cá? tɛən nāan cákthýa
No, I have never thought of
going married at all.
C-1
A. câw khéej dâj thûyk tîtian boo? Have you ever been criticized?
B. khéej Yes.

C-2
A. lâaw khéej dâj paj mîan lâaw boo? Has he ever been to Laos?
B. bân, njân bâm khéej No.

C-3
A. câw khéej dâj âân nánsñy phîm sàat lâaw boo? Have you ever read the Sat Lao Newspaper?
B. khéej, khôj khéej dâj âân nánsñy phîm sàat lâaw sçon sâm thîa lèaw Yes, I have read the Sat Lao Newspaper two or three times already.

C-4
A. câw khéej dâj thûyk tamlûât câp boo? Have you ever been arrested by the police?
B. bân, khôj njân bâm khéej dâj thûyk tamlûât câp câkthîa No, I have never been arrested by the police.

ไม่ได้ผูนมีสิทธิ์ดำเนินการบังคับตามกฎหมายใด ๆ อย่างใด ๆ ละเว้นที่มีหลักฐานของ\" เลือก \" ละเว้นที่มีหลักฐานของ\" เลือก \" อย่างใด ๆ ละเว้น
NOTES

1) khēaj + VP is used to indicate that someone has experienced something.

khõj khēaj paj pāthèet láaw    'I have been to Laos.'
câw khēaj pen wát boo?    'Have you ever had a cold?'

2) thûyk + VP corresponds roughly to the passive in English. It occurs only with a very limited number of verbs, most of which have unpleasant connotations.

câw thûyk títian boo?    'Were you criticized?'

If an Agent is indicated, it occurs after thûyk before VP:

láaw thûyk tamlûat câp    (He was by a policeman arrested.)
    'He was arrested by the policeman.'

3) The two constructions above frequently occur together:

câw khēaj dâj thûyk khañ boo?    'Have you ever been locked up?'

397
APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) tàn tẹn khọj kẹot, màa khọj _____________ hến khôn phụ nàn câk thọa
   (I have never seen that man before in my life.)

(b) câw ______________ tamluat câp câk thọa bọ?
   (Were you ever arrested by the police?)

(c) nọơn sǎaw khọj khéej _____________ kát sǎam thọa lèu
   (My younger sister was bitten 3 times by a dog.)

(d) lùuk sáaj kók láiaw _____________ kháa taaj (sǐa sǐiwīt)
    jǔu náj sोnkhāam wìatnāam
   (Her oldest son was killed in the War in Vietnam.)

(e) khácsaw ______________ paį jǔu mỳaŋ lùaŋ phảbaŋ
   (They have never lived in Luang Prabang.)

(f) pìi kaaj nìi láiaw pen khọj wát njáį _____________
   (Last year she had the flu 2 times.)

(g) lǎaw ______________ wǎan nāan câk thọa
   (He has never been out of a job.)

Answers: 1(a)njáŋ bọį khéej (b)khéej thọyк (c)thọyк màа (d)thọyк (e)njáŋ bọį khéej (f)sỏon thọa (g)bọį khéej
(h) càw khéej dàj paj tìisék cák thäß bōo? บั้ร, ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
(Have you ever been to war? Not yet.)

(1) càw ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ kesn khâw pen thăhăan bōo? ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
(Were you drafted? Yes, I was.)

(j) càw dàj șan nănsýy phîm mỳy nǐi ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ bōo? șan
l̄èw ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
(Have you read today's newspaper? Yes, 2 or 3 times.)

(k) lâaw ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ saj nǐi môt cák thäß
(He has never been completely out of debt.)

(l) khêj ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ dàj hîán pșəŋ līst
(I have never learned how to repair cars.)

---

Answers: (h)njâŋ บั้ร khéej (1)khéej thỳyk... khéej (j)l̄èw...
şọŋ săam thäß (k)บั้ร khéej (l)njâŋ บั้ร khéej

399
CYCLE 81

M-1

paj nám khâj

míi phâj si paj nám khâj boō?
go with me

Is there anybody going with me?

míi, nén

míi phâj míi nén boō?
have, money

Is there anybody who has money?

nâpthûy sâatsánâaphût

míi phâj nâpthûy sâatsánâaphût boō?
believe in Buddhism

Is there anyone that believes in Buddhism?

lêsk (aw), nén doolàa
tô exchange for, dollars

Is there anybody who wants to exchange (other money) for dollars?

míi phâj jâak lêsk aw nén doolàa boō?

títtaam, khâaw nîi

follow, keep up, news

Is there anybody who wants to keep up with the news?

míi phâj jâak títtaam khâaw nîi boō?

phûu taannâa

Is there anybody who wants to be our representative?

míi phâj jâak pen phûu taannâa phûakhâw boō?

representative

aasăa sâmâk

to volunteer

míi phâj jâak aasăa sâmâk boō?

Is there anybody who wants to volunteer?
M-2

{sawja}ya

míi, phùakhaw si paj
{sawja}ya khácàw

pákan, khwáam pðophaj

míi, phùakhaw si pákan
khwáam pðotphaj khşon
khácàw

láajñaan

míi, phùakhaw si hêt
láajñaan hâj phţn

wáñ phéñkaan

míi, phùakhaw si pen
phţu wáñ phéñkaan

khùapkhúm

míi, phùakhaw si
khùapkhúm khácàw

hâj khám nè?nám këe khácàw

give them advice

míi, phùakhaw si hâj khám
nè?nám këe khácàw

help, assist

Yes, we will go help them.

guarantee, safety

Yes, we will guarantee their safety.

report

Yes, we will make reports to him.

lay out a plan

Yes, we will lay out the plan.

supervise

Yes, we will supervise them.

Yes, we will give them advice.
M-3

paį sǭjłjya k hàcàw

bɔŋ mī phāj sì paį
sǭjłjya k hàcàw

to go help them
There is no one to go help them.

dùk k hàcàw
phǭotphāį kʰɔŋ phān

to guarantee their safety
There is no one to guarantee their safety.

hɔt láajnán hât phān

bɔŋ mī phāj hêt láajnán
hât phān

to make reports to them
There is no one to make reports to them.

hât k hàm nēŋ nâm kəə khàcàw

bɔŋ mī phāj hât k hàm
nēŋnâm kəə khàcàw

to give them advise
There is no one to give advice to them.

C-1

A. mī phāj sì paį sǭjłjya
làyaw bɔŋ?

Is there anybody that is going to help him?

B. mī, kɔŋ sì paį
sǭjłjya làyaw

Yes, I will go help him.
C-2

A. mìi phǎj jâak tîttaam kхаàw nìi bòo?  
   Is there anybody who wants to keep up with this news?

B. mìi, lâaw jâak tîttaam kхаàw nìi  
   Yes, she wants to keep up with this news.

A. mìi phǎj jâak aasâa sàmâk bòo?  
   Is there anybody who wants to volunteer?

B. bòo, bòo mìi phǎj  
   No, nobody does.

NOTES

1) The verb mìi may have Sentence Complements when it occurs without NP (Subject).

There is someone (who) has money.'

The indefinite pronoun phǎj 'someone, anyone' (as contrasted with the question word phǎj 'who') can not occur as NP (Subject) except in included sentences.
APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) 做起嘅命狀派四名拉偶實五事四拉偶起二
(b) 傳達狀四起一嘅主四起三分向那四事
(c) 拉偶拉偶狀四起一嘅開四起一分向那四事
(d) 起起嘅狀四起一嘅以四起一分向那四事
(e) 起起嘅狀四起一嘅纔四起一分向那四事
(f) 起拉偶起二起四起一分向那四事
(g) 起起狀四起一分向那四事
(h) 起起事情四起一嘅向四起一分向那四事

Answers: 1(a) Nobody wants to go with him because his car is not good. (b) They asked if anybody wanted to go out to the countryside. (c) He said there were lots of people who wanted to learn how to paint, but so far I haven't seen any of them. (d) They wanted to know if anybody was going or not. If nobody is going, he'll go alone. (e) They were afraid that nobody would be interested, so they didn't bring them. (f) His car is no good, so no company wants to insure it. (g) Is there anyone at the American Embassy that knows Vietnamese? (h) There was no one to advise her, so she did wrong.
(1) thâawàm bọọ mí phểj bōok tháànj láaw, láaw âat cá? lọn tháànj koo dàj

(j) khįįj bọọ hùu wàmm pen njąñ cỳŋ bọọ mí pheń hâj khwáam sôncaj náj lỳàŋ nii

(k) njàñ bọọ mí pheń màa hàa khįįj bọo? bọọ, njàñ bọọ mí

(l) bọọ mí pheń màa pàsúm láaw léej khît wàmm mỳy nli bọọ mèèn pàsúm

Answers: (1)If there is no one to tell him the way, he may get lost. (j)I don't know why nobody is interested in this situation. (k)Hasn't anyone come to see me yet? No, not yet. (l)Nobody came to the meeting, so he thought the meeting wasn't today.
 podrá más caca mu

hái én podrá más caca mu waa jaanđaj?

nàm podrá más caca màakklàn

hái én nàm podrá más caca màakklàn waa jaanđaj?

nàm podrá más caca hánphèn

hái én nàm podrá más caca hánphèn waa jaanđaj?

nàm podrá sók más caca taa

hái én nàm podrá sók más caca taa waa jaanđaj?

thòót podrá pen thâhâan

hái én thòót podrá pen thâhâan waa jaanđaj?

kàpuu podrá aasâj jëu náj thâlèéé

hái én kàpuu podrá aasâj jëu náj thâlèéé waa jaanđaj?
paa thii aasaj jUU naj nam cyyt
   fish that live in fresh water
haw een paa thii aasaj jUU
   What do we call fish that
naj nam cyyt waa jaajdaj?
   live in fresh water?

M-2

nammn muu
   lard
haw een nammn thii daj maa
   We call the oil that we get
cak muu waa nammn muu
   from pigs, lard.

nam maaakklana
   orange juice
haw een nam thii daj maa
   We call the liquid that we
cak maaakklana waa nam
   get from oranges, orange juice.
   maaakklana

nam pheng
   honey
haw een nam thii daj maa
   We call the liquid that we
cak napheeng waa nam pheng
   get from a bee hive, honey.

nam taa
   We call the liquid that comes
haw een nam thii sok maa
   out of the eyes, tears.
cak taa waa nam taa

thuut thahn
   a military attaché
haw een nam thii pen
   We call an envoy who is in
thahn waa thuut thahn
   the military service, a
   military attaché.
kāpuu thālée

hāw èen kāpuu thī aasāj
jūn nāj thālée wān kāpuu thālée

sea crabs

We call crabs that live in the sea, sea crabs.

paa nāmcŷyt

hāw èen paa thī aasāj
jūn nāj nān cŷyt wān paa nāmcŷyt

freshwater fish

We call fish that live in fresh water, fresh-water fish.

C-1

A. hāw èen nām thī dāj māa câak māakkḷān wān jāmmadaj?

What do we call liquid that we get from an orange?

B. hāw èen nām thī dāj māa câak māakkḷān wān nām māakkḷān

We call the liquid that we get from an orange, orange juice.

C-2

A. paa nāmcŷyt mēsn njānn?

What is fresh-water fish?

B. paa nāmcŷyt mēsn paa thī aasāj jūn nāj nāmcŷyt

Fresh-water fish are fish that live in fresh-water.

ไม่ขัดดอยด้วยมีด้วยกิจภัย มั่นคงที่น้อยจะเป็นดีก็จะดีก็จะดี ถามจักฉะจักฉะ จักฉะจักฉะจักฉะ แล้วฉะจักฉะจะได้ไม่สิ้นสุด.

ที่เป็นที่น่าเชื่อถือที่สุดอยู่ที่สุดที่สุด

408
NOTES
(Cycles 82-85)

Cycles 82-85 all might be called 'Word definition' cycles, since each of them illustrates a different way of defining words in Lao. There are other ways that are not included in these cycles. You are encouraged to discover them. You may do so by asking your instructor for the definition of any new words you may encounter in your reading or elsewhere. Avoid asking for English translations of Lao words.

CYCLE 83

M-1

aaj

shy

háw èen khón thɔŋ aaj jūu
lỳaj lỳaj wàa jàañdaj?

What do we call a person who is always shy?

khàan

lazy

háw èen khón thɔŋ khàañ jūu
lỳaj lỳaj wàa jàañdaj?

What do we call a person who is always lazy?

jàan

afraid

háw èen khón thɔŋ jáañ jūu
lỳaj lỳaj wàa jàañdaj?

What do we call a person who is always afraid?

túą? túą?

lying

háw èen khón thɔŋ túą? jūu
lỳaj lỳaj wàa jàañdaj?

What do we call a person who's given to lying?
lāk
háw èen khôn thì lāk
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāndaj?

koon
háw èen khôn thì koon jūu
lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāndaj?

M-2
lỳym
háw èen khôn thì lỳym
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā khôn
khî thì lỳym

bāj
háw èen khôn thì bāj jūu
lỳaj lỳaj wāā khôn khî thì
bāj

khî thì
háw èen khôn thì khî thì
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā
khôn khî thì thì

khúj
háw èen khôn thì khúj
jūu lỳaj lỳaj wāā khôn
khî thì khúj

stealing
What do we call a person who's given to stealing?

cheating
What do we call a person who's given to cheating?

forgetful
We call a person who's given to forgetting, a forgetful person.

grumbling
We call a person who's given to grumbling, a grumbler.

stinginess
We call a person who's given to stinginess, a stingy person.

bragging
We call a person who's given to bragging, a bragger.
máw

háw èen kbón thī máw
jū lỳaj lỳaj wàa kbón
khīī máw
drunk

hâj
crying

háw èen kbón thī hâj
jū lỳaj lỳaj wàa kbón
khīī hâj

We call a person who is always drunk, a drunkard.

We call a person who's given to crying, a cry baby.

M-3

khōn khīī khūk

khōn khīī khūk mēen
khōn nēswdaj?
jailbird

khōn khīī phâj

khōn khīī phâj mēen
khōn nēswdaj?
cardsharp

khōn khīī jaa

khōn khīī jaa mēen
khōn nēswdaj?
opium addict

khōn khīī phānjàat

khōn khīī phānjàat mēen
khōn nēswdaj?
sickly person

khōn khīī thùut

khōn khīī thùut mēen
khōn nēswdaj?
leper

What's a jailbird?

What's a cardsharp?

What's an opium addict?

What's a sickly person?

What's a leper?
khon khii law
khon khii law meen khon neewdaj?
alcoholic
What's an alcoholic?

M-4
titkhuk jwu samse
khon khii khuk meen khon thii titkhuk jwu samse
is in and out of jail
A jailbird is a person who is in and out of jail.

lin phaj pen kaan phanan
khon khii phaj meen khon thii phaj pen kaan phanan
plays cards for money
A cardsharp is a person who plays cards for money.

tit jaafin
khon khii jaaj meen khon thii tit jaafin
is addicted to opium
An opium addict is a person who is addicted to opium.

dyum law laaj keen paj
khon khii law meen khon thii dum law laaj keen paj
drinks to excess
An alcoholic is a person who drinks to excess.

bo saaaj jwu samse
khon khii phanjaat meen khon thii bo saaaj jwu samse
always sick
A sickly person is a person who is always sick.
C-1

A. hâw ëen khôn thîI aaj     What do we call a person who
jûû lỳaj lỳaj wâa   is always shy?
jaândaj?

B. hâw ëen khôn thîI aaj     We call a person who is
jûû lỳaj lỳaj wâa khôn     always shy, a shy person.
khîI aaj.

C-2

A. khôn khîI khûk mëen khôn     What's a jailbird?
néewdaj?

B. khôn khîI khûk mëen khôn    A jailbird is the person
títkhûk jûû samše.     who is in and out of jail.

C-3

(Students ask questions then instructor confirms. Example:)

1. S: hâw ëen khôn thîI khàan   T: mëen lëew
   jûû lỳaj wâa khôn khîI    jûû lỳaj lỳaj wâa khôn
   khàan, mëen bôo?          khîI kîn, mëen bôo?

2 S: hâw ëen khôn thîI kîn       T: bôô mëen.
   jûû lỳaj lỳaj wâa khôn
   khîI kîn, mëen bôo?
M-1

hētwlāk klawkāp màj
hàw èen khôn thī hētwlāk
klawkāp màj wāa jaândaj?

works with wood

What do we call a person who works with wood?

pees lōt
hàw èen khôn thī pees
lōt wāa jaândaj?

fixes cars

What do we call a person who fixes cars?

hētwlāk klawkāp fājfāa
hàw èen khôn thī hētwlāk
klawkāp fājfāa wāa jaândaj?

works with electricity

What do we call a person who works with electricity?

pūk hyan
hàw èen khôn thī pūk
hyan wāa jaândaj?

builds houses

What do we call a person who builds houses?

pees móon
hàw èen khôn thī pees
móon wāa jaändaj?

repairs watches

What do we call a person who repairs watches?

tī tī khām
hàw èen khôn thī tī tī
khām wāa jaändaj?

makes things out of gold

What do we call a person who makes things out of gold?

tī tī lēk
hàw èen khôn thī tī tī
lēk wāa jaändaj?

makes things out of iron

What do we call a person who makes things out of iron?
Lao Basic Course

M-2

saan màj

hâw êen khôn th̄ā hêtwlak
kliawkáp màj waa saan màj

a wood worker

We call a person who works with wood, a wood worker.

car mechanic

saan peen lôt

hâw êen khôn th̄ā peen lôt
waa saan peen lôt

We call a person who fixes cars, a car mechanic.

an electrician

saan fajfàa

hâw êen khôn th̄ā hêtwlak
kliawkáp fajfàa waa saan fajfàa

We call a person who works with electricity, electrician.

house-builder

saan pûk hyan

hâw êen khôn th̄ā pûk
hyan waa saan pûk hyan

We call a person who builds houses, a house-builder.

a watch repair man

saan peen lék

hâw êen khôn th̄ā peen mûn
mûn waa saan peen mûn

We call a person who repairs watches, a watch repair man.

a blacksmith

saan tii khâm

hâw êen khôn th̄ā tii lék
waa saan tii lék

We call a person who makes things out of iron, a blacksmith.

a goldsmith

saan tii khâm

hâw êen khôn th̄ā tii khâm
waa saan tii khâm

We call a person who makes things out of gold, a goldsmith.

415
M-3

saan tâtpôm

saan tâtpôm meen phuu
thii het njang?

a barber

What does a barber do?

saan koo saan

saan koo saan meen phuu
thii het njang?

a builder

What does a builder do?

saan thâajhûup

saan thâajhûup meen phuu
thii het njang?

a photographer

What does a photographer do?

saan tâtkhyânnun

saan tâtkhyânnun meen phuu
thii het njang?

a tailor

What does a tailor do?

saan thâasîi

saan thâasîi meen phuu
thii het njang?

a painter

What does a painter (workman) do?

saan têem

saan têem meen phuu thii
het njang?

a painter

What does a painter (artist) do?

saan pàn

saan pàn meen phuu thii
het njang?

a modeller, potter

What does a modeller do?
thii tát phôm pen knows how to cut hair
saaŋ tátphôm meen khôn
thii tát phôm pen

koo saaŋ pen knows how to build
saaŋ koo saaŋ meen khôn
thii koo saaŋ pen

tát khyan núŋ pen knows how to tailor
saaŋ tátkhyan núŋ meen
khôn thii tát khyan núŋ

thii thii saaŋ thii saaŋ meen khôn
thii thii thii thii saaŋ thii saaŋ pen

tháasíi pen knows how to paint
saaŋ tháasíi meen khôn
thii tháasíi pen

tësmhùup pen knows how to paint pictures
saaŋ têm meen khôn thii
tësmhùup pen

pàn sin khôn duaj dindàak pen knows how to mold things with clay
saaŋ pàn meen khôn thii
pàn sin khôn duaj dindàak pen

A barber is a person who knows how to cut hair.
A builder is a person who knows how to build.
A tailor is a person who knows how to make clothing.
A photographer is a person who knows how to take pictures.
A painter is a person who knows how to paint.
A painter is a person who knows how to paint pictures.
A modeller is a person who knows how to mold things with clay.
C-1

A. háw èen khôn thii hêtwiak klawkáp màj waa jəändaj? What do we call a person who works with wood?

B. háw èen khôn thii hêtwiak klawkáp màj waa sān màj We call a person who works with wood, a woodworker.

C-2

A. sān tàtphôm mēn phuu thii hêt njāŋ? What does a barber do?

B. sān tàtphôm mēn khôn thii tàtphôm pen. A barber is a person who knows how to cut hair.

C-3

(Student asks a question and instructor confirms: Example:)

1. S: háw èen khôn thii khúakin T: bō mēn pen waa sān khúakin, mēn boō?

2. S: háw èen khôn thii hêt T: mēn lēēw kēēp pen waa sān tātkēēp, mēn boō?)
M-1

paj hóonhían
goes to school
háw èen khón thii paj
What do we call a person
hóonhían waa jàndaj? who goes to school?

sýksãa
is studying at a high level
háw èen khón thii sýksãa
What do we call a person
waa jàndaj? who is studying at a high
level?

thómthiaw
travelling
háw èen khón thii thómthiaw
What do we call a person
waa jàndaj? who is travelling?

pùn khón yyn
robs other people
háw èen khón thii pùn khón
What do we call a person who
yyn waa jàndaj?
robs other people?

sýypsãan
investigates
háw èen khón thii sýypsãan
What do we call a person
waa jàndaj? who investigates?

rõp sék
fights in a war
háw èen khón thii rõp sék
What do we call a person
waa jàndaj? who fights in a war?

teen phéen
composes songs
háw èen khón thii teen
What do we call a person
phéen waa jàndaj?
who composes songs?
kāp hỳabin
    hāw èn khôn thIT kāp
    hỳabin wāa nākbīn

khlian pỳm, nākkhlian
    hāw èn khôn thIT khlian
    pỳm wāa nākkhlian

tènlám kēŋ
    hāw èn khôn thIT tènlám
    kēŋ wāa nāktènlám

māk ʒok phácon phaj
    hāw èn khôn thIT māk ʒok
    phácon phaj wāa nākphácon-
    phaj

hōŋ phéen kēŋ
    hāw èn khôn thIT
    phéen kēŋ wāa nākhōŋ

tiimúaj kēŋ
    hāw èn khôn thIT tiimúaj
    kēŋ wāa nākmúaj

pilots a plane, a pilot

We call the person who
pilots a plane, a pilot.

writes books, an author

We call the person who writes
books, an author.

dances well, a dancer

We call the person who dances
well, a dancer.

likes to go out and face danger

We call the person who likes
to out and face danger, a
daredevil.

is good in singing

We call the person who is
good in singing, a singer.

boxes well

We call the person who boxes
well, a boxer.
M-3

nākdontrīi
nākdontrīi mēn njāŋ?
What's a musician?

nākwīthānjāasāat
nākwīthānjāasāat mēn njāŋ?
What's a scientist?

nākkaaanthūut
nākkaaanthūut mēn njāŋ?
What's a diplomat?

nākkaammyāŋ
nākkaammyāŋ mēn njāŋ?
What's a politician?

nākkīlāa
nākkīlāa mēn njāŋ?
What's an athlete?

nāknāŋsyyphīm
nāknāŋsyyphīm mēn njāŋ?
What's a journalist?

nākthōot
nākthōot mēn njāŋ?
What's a prisoner?

M-4

lēn dontrīi kēŋ
plays music well

nākdontrīi mēn khōn thīī
A musician is a person who
lēn dontrīi kēŋ
plays music well.
syksaa khonkhwaa thaan dan
withanjaasaat

nakwithanjaasaat meen khon
thii syksaa khonkhwaa thaan
dan withanjaasaat

pen caunaththi thankaan jou
naj sathanthuut

nakkaanthuut meen khon thii
pen caunaththi thankaan
jou naj sathanthuut

lin kaanmyan

nakkaanmyan meen khon thii
lin kaanmyan

lin kila

nakkiila meen khon thii
lin kila

khyan khaaw lon naasuyphim

naknaasuyphim meen khon
thii khyan khaaw lon
naasuyphim

titkhuk

nakthoot meen khon thii
titkhuk

studies and carries out research
in the field of science

A scientist is a person who
studies and carries out
research in the field of
science.

official in the embassy

A diplomat is a person who
is an official in the
embassy.

works in politics

A politician is a person who
works in politics.

plays sport

An athlete is a person who
plays sports.

writes for a newspaper

A journalist is a person who
writes for a newspaper.

is imprisoned

A prisoner is a person who
is imprisoned.
C-1
A. hǎw èen khôn thii paj hóonhian wāa jāandaj? What do we call a person who goes to school?
B. hǎw èen khôn thii paj hóonhian wāa nākhian We call a person who goes to school, a student.

C-2
A. hǎw èen khôn thii kháp hỷabin wāa jāandaj? What do we call a person who pilots a plane?
B. hǎw èen khôn thii kháp hỷabin wāa nākbīn We call a person who pilots a plane, a pilot.

C-3
A. nākdontriī mēen njān? What's a musician?
B. nākdontriī mēen khôn thii lēn dontrīi kēn A musician is a person who plays music well.

C-4
(Student asks question and instructor confirms. Example:)
1 S: hǎw èen khôn thii tātphôm T: bōj mēen wāa nāktātphôm, mēen boō?
2 S: hǎw èen khôn thii sādzēn T: mēen lēēw lākhōon wāa nāksādzēn lākhōon
## BASIC COURSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Price</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>1-50</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>1-20</td>
<td>$3.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>51-60</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>1-30</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodian</td>
<td>1-45</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>21-40</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodian</td>
<td>46-90</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>31-50</td>
<td>$1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>1-30</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td>Twi</td>
<td>1-20</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinyanja</td>
<td>1-63</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>Vol. I</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>French (set)</em></td>
<td>Units 1-12</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>Vol. II</td>
<td>$1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units 13-24</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yoruba</td>
<td>Units 1-49</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fula</td>
<td>1-40</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>1-12</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>13-24</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Vol. I</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td></td>
<td>$4.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Vol. II</td>
<td>$1.00</td>
<td>Graded Reader</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Vol. III</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td>Supplemental</td>
<td></td>
<td>$3.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>1-40</td>
<td>$5.00</td>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>1-12</td>
<td>$2.00</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td></td>
<td>$3.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>13-24</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td>Graded Reader</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kirundi</td>
<td>1-30</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td>Indonesian</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kituba</td>
<td>1-35</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td>Modern Written</td>
<td></td>
<td>$4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Vol. I</td>
<td>$3.00</td>
<td>Programmatic</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Vol. II</td>
<td>$4.75</td>
<td>Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lao</td>
<td>Vol. I</td>
<td></td>
<td>Programmatic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td>1-24</td>
<td>$2.75</td>
<td>Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luganda</td>
<td>Lessons 1-94</td>
<td>$2.25</td>
<td>Programmatic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moré</td>
<td>1-48</td>
<td>$1.75</td>
<td>Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>1-25</td>
<td>$3.50</td>
<td>Programmatic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>26-50</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
<td>Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shona</td>
<td>1-49</td>
<td>$2.50</td>
<td>Swahili</td>
<td></td>
<td>$0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish (set)</td>
<td>Units 1-15</td>
<td>$12.25</td>
<td>Thai Reference</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units 16-30</td>
<td></td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>31-45</td>
<td>$3.25</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>46-55</td>
<td>$4.00</td>
<td>Graded Reader</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swahili</td>
<td>1-150</td>
<td>$3.00</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.